CONTENTS

S.#	CHAPTER NAME	P.No
1	COMMERCIAL GEOGRAPHY; INTRODUCTION, SCOPE AND IMPORTANCE	01
	Important Short Type Questions & Answers	01
	Important Detailed Questions and Answers	04
1940	Important Objective & Multiple Choice Questions	08
2	THE FOUNDATIONS OF COMMERCIAL GEOGRAPHY	10
	Important Short Type Questions & Answers	10
	Important Detailed Questions and Answers	19
	Important Objective & Multiple Choice Questions	25
3	GEOGRAPHICAL LAND LOCATION OF PAKISTAN	27
	Important Short Type Questions & Answers	27
	Important Detailed Questions and Answers	29
	Important Objective & Multiple Choice Questions	33
4	PHYSICAL FEATURES OF PAKISTAN	35
	Important Short Type Questions & Answers	35
	Important Detailed Questions and Answers	42
	Important Objective & Multiple Choice Questions	46
5	THE CLIMATE OF PAKISTAN	49
	Important Short Type Questions & Answers	40
	Important Detailed Questions and Answers	34
	Important Objective & Multiple Choice Questions	E #



6	THE SOIL CLASSIFICATION IN PAKISTAN Important Short Type Questions & Answers					
	Important Detailed Questions and Answers Important Objective & Multiple Choice Questions					
7	NATURAL VEGETATION AND IRRIGATION SYSTEM	6				
	Important Short Type Questions & Answers Important Detailed Questions and Answers Important Objective & Multiple Choice Questions	67 78				
8	AGRICULTURE OF PAKISTAN	83				
	Important Short Type Questions & Answers Important Detailed Questions and Answers Important Objective & Multiple Choice Questions	87 93 10				



CHAPTER

Commercial Geography introduction, scope and importance

IMPORTANT SHORT QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

Define Geography and describe the two main branches of Geography.

Ans: Geography:

The science that deals with the division of the world and environmental conditions is called Geography.

Main Branches of Geography:

The main branches of Geography are following:

Physical Geography: (i)

The branches of Geography that deals with the study of all those factors that collectively construct the physical environment of man is called Physical Geography.

Human Geography:

The branches of Geography that deals with the study of the world with its people and their communities and culture along with their nations with a specific place is called Human Geography.

Define Commercial Geography. Write down any five definitions of commercial geaphy as given by eminent thinkers

Ans: Commercial Geography:

The branch of Human Geography which deals with the study of man and his economic activities under varying sets of conditions for the welfare of mankind is called Commercial Geography. It is the knowledge of all activities of man which he adopts for earning his livelihood. Thus it gives information about all resources, activities, institutions and human capabilities which are helpful in earning livelihood.

Commercial Geography and Thinkers:

The definitions of commercial geography as given by eminent thinkers are following.

According to Professor Marthi: (i)

"Commercial Geography deals with the study of commodities on this earth and found from inside of the earth useful for human beings, their production, exchange and division".

According to Professor Duddely Stamp: (ii)

"Geography deals with the study of the production of commodities, materialistic resources, their division and their sale and purchase."

(iii)

According to Professor Herbert: "Commercial Geography is actually that knowledge which explains the complete picture of the resources of the world and teaches the use of the different resources obtained from the earth for the welfare of mankind".



According to Professor Earl B.Shah: (iv)

"Commercial Geography is the knowledge about the different resources of earning livelihood and it gives knowledge about economic and commercial activities of human beings".

According to Professor J. Russell: (v)

"Commercial Geography gives information about the division of economic activities and different methods of earning livelihood."

Describe at least five advantages of the study of Commercial Geography. Q.3

Ans: The Advantages of the Study of Commercial Geography:

The advantages of the study of commercial geography are following:

The students of commerce get information about the maintenance of their future by (i) choosing special field of trade.

All the traders of the world get knowledge about international trade and market and they (ii) become aware about the mineral, agriculture and industrial resources of the world.

(iii) The study of commercial geography also provides knowledge for the farmers and cultivators. They get information about the best seeds, fertilizers and modern agricultural techniques and equipments.

(iv) The economic exports get information from the study of commercial geography for the development of economic planning with the comparison of the commercial conditions of

the world.

The successful bankers of the world which are involved in international investment get (v) useful information from the study of commercial geography, by this the banking sector becomes more established.

Explain the importance of Commercial Geography for an industrialist.

Ans: The Importance of Commercial Geography for an Industrialist:

Many physical and political factors play their role in the industrial development of a country, so the study of commercial geography gives information to an industrialist through which industrial progress can be made possible. An industrialist can acquire knowledge about the localization and concentration of an industry at a partricular place. He can also get aware about the physical and economical factors related to the progress of industries and also related to the process of production. He can also get aware about the physical and economical factors related to the progress of industries and also related to the process of production. He can get knowledge about the consumption of industrial products in the markets of the world.

State five points for the importance of the study of commercial geography for the commerce students.

Ans: The Importance of the Study of Commercial Geography for the Commerce Students:

The importance of the study of commercial geography for the commerce students are following. (i)

The students of commerce get knowledge about the agricultural resources of the world (ii)

The students of commerce know about the determination and location of various industries in the world through the study of commercial geography.

The study of commercial geography gives knowledge to the commerce students about the (iii) procedure of manufacturing of many commodities in industries, the raw material required for manufacturing and the factors of the determination and localization of industries. (iv)

The students of commerce get knowledge about home trade, international trade, means of transportation and international markets through the study of commercial geography.

- The students of commercial geography is beneficial for the commerce students because it (v) provides help in the selection of their better career opportunities.
- Define Geography and Commercial Geography and describe the relation Q.6between them.

Ans: Geography:

The science which deals with the study of the identification and analysis of the distribution and formation of the features of the earth surface is called Geography.

Commercial Geography:

The branch of Human Geography which deals with the study of man with his economic struggle with respect to his physical environment is called Commercial Geography.

The Relation between Geography and Commercial Geography:

There is a close relation between Geography and Commercial Geography because Geography explains the physical features and the physical environment of a certain place on this earth whereas Commercial Geography is related to the study of exchange of products in that place where they are produced. Both Geography and Commercial Geography give knowledge about the resources of the earth and the trade routes of different countries of the world.

Write down five sentences on the scope of Commercial Geography. Q.7

Ans: The Scope of Commercial Geography:

Commercial Geography covers a wide range of knowledge about the commercial activities, resources and trade of the world. The scope of commercial geography can be described as following.

It provides complete description about agricultural and mineral resources alongwith power (i) and energy resources.

It gives knowledge about the industrial resources and trade of the world.

Commercial geography gives knowledge about the means of communication and means of (ii) (iii) transportation.

Commercial geography describes about the trade centres and trade routes of the world. It (iv) describes about the markets of the world.

Commercial geography covers the study of natural resources, human resources and (v) economic activities of the world.

Write down the significance and importance of the study of Commercial Geography in five sentences. Three

Ans: The Importance and Significance of the Study of Commercial

Geography:

The importance and significance of the study of commercial geography can be described as following.

The study of commercial geography helps in the identification and the proper use of (i) natural resources.

The study of commercial geography is helpful to know about the physical changes of the (ii)

The study of commercial geography helps to know about physical environment and the (iii) analysis of different physical environment.

The study of commercial geography helps to know the agricultural and industrial problems (iv) and their solution.

The study of commercial geography is helpful to know the division of world trade and (v) economic activities.

Write a few sentences on the role of the Muslims in the development of Q.9Commercial Geography.

Ans: The Role of the Muslims in the Development of Commercial

Geography:

Islam always considered trade as a respectable profession that is why our Holy Prophet Hazrat Muhammad (S.A.W.) also adopted trade as a profession during his early life. Trade has also been described as a sacred profession in the Holy Quran. The Muslims played a significant role in the development of Commercial Geography.

Trade was always taken as a respectable profession in Arabia, so the Muslim traders used (i)

to go for trade outside Arabia in many countries.

The trade was done not only by the roads but also by sea to the different parts of the (ii)

The Muslim traders not only performed their trade activities but also involved them in the (iii) preaching of Islam.

Islam spread in Sri-Lanka, Indonesia, China, East Europe, Northern Europe and North (iv)

Africa due to the efforts of the Arab traders,

The Muslim traders organized their trade activities, management of business transactions (v) and transportation, thus played very significant role in the development of commercial geography.

Define Trade and Commerce and describe the relation of Commercial Geography with them.

Ans: Trade:

The mutual buying and selling of goods and commodities in order to earn, profit is called Trade. Domestic trade and international trade are its two kinds.

Commercial:

The collection of economic activities which are adopted for the organization of manufacturing, marketing, finance, insurance, transportation and buying and selling of goods and commodities is called Commerce.

Relation of Commercial Geography with Trade and Commerce:

Commercial Geography, trade and commerce are interelated as the study of commercial geography plays a key role in the development of Trade and Commerce. As commercial geography gives complete information about the natural resources of the world therefore it becomes easy to know about the production and needs of any country. Thus informations received from commercial geography are helpful to organize and development of trade and commerce in the world.

IMPORTANT DETAILED QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Define Commercial Geography in the light of the point of views of different Q.1Geographers and write down the importance and advantages of its study.

Ans: Commercial Geography

The study of man and his economic activities under varying sets of conditions for the welfare of mankind is called Commercial Geography. It is the knowledge about the resources and trade of the world.

Commercial Geography in the Views of Geographers

The nature of the study of Commercial Geography can be explained in the light of the point of views of different geographers as following.

(I) Professor Marthi

According to Professor Marthi,

"Commercial Geography is the branch of geography which deals with the study of commodities on this earth and found from inside of the earth useful for human beings along with their production, exchange and division."

Profesor Herbert (II)

According to Professor Herbert,

"Commercial Geography is actually that knowledge which gives and explains a complete picture of the resources of the world and teaches the use of different resources obtained from the earth for the welfare of mankind."

Professor Duddley Stamp (III)

According to Professor Duddley Stamp,

"Commercial Geography is the branch of geography which deals with the study of production of commodities, materialistic resources, their division, exchange and their sale and purchase.

(iv) Professor Earl .B. Shah

According to Professor Earl .B. Shah,

"Commercial Geography is a series which gives knowledge about different resources of earning livelihood of man. It gives also knowledge about economic and commercial activities of man."

(v) Professor J. Russell

Professor J. Russell says to explain the nature of commercial geography that it gives information about the division of economic activities and different modes of earning livelihood.

Professor N.A. Siddiqui (vi)

According to Professor N.A. Siddique,

"Commercial Geography provides knowledge about the production activities of the world, their trade and the geographical facts related to them."

If we take a review of the different points of views of the geographers then it is cleared that these definitions explain the nature and scope and nature of the commercial geography through the nature of commercial geography has been explained in different ways but it is also a fact that the fundamental nature of commercial geography in all these definitions are almost the same. Thus we cannot say that one definition is better than the other because all the thinkers and the geographers have explained the common thing which is the commercial activities of man and the distribution of material resources in the world and their collective information is commercial

The Importance and Advantages of the Study of Commercial Geography

Commercial Geography and its study has great importance and advantages in the modern and commercial age. As the study of commercial geography, the agricultural resources of the world are known and the mineral resources about the development of industries. It gives information about the production and raw material which is required for the production of commodities among different industries.

Commercial Geography gives information about the means of communication, means of transportation for the development of internal and external trade. It also gives information about different international markets. The study of commercial geography provides knowledge about the population of the world and helps in getting awareness about World Trade conditions.



The importance and the advantages of the study of commercial geography can be described as following.

(i) The students of commerce get information about the maintenance of their career in future with the study of commercial geography because they are able to select better field of trade.

(ii) All the traders of the world get information about international markets and thus with the study of commercial geography, they become aware about the mineral, agricultural and

industrial resources of the world.

(iii) The study of commercial geography is also useful for the farmers and the cultivators because through the study of commercial geography, they get information about the selection of the best seeds, fertilizers, pesticides and modern agricultural equipments and technology.

(iv) The study of commercial geography also provides help to the economic experts, through the study of commercial geography, they can compare and analyse the commercial conditions of the world, thus they can frame out better economic policies and derive better

economic planning for their own countries.

(v) The study of commercial geography is helpful for the bankers and for the banking business. The successful bankers always draw out useful information from the study of commercial geography for the development of business sector and international banking investment.

(v1) The study of commercial geography gives a view of the agricultural, mineral and industrial development among different countries of the world. Thus these information plays a role

in the development of industrial sector.

(vii) Many physical; economic and political factors play their role in the industrial development of the countries. Commercial geography give information about those conditions to industrialists which are helpful in the development of industries.

(viii) The study of commercial geography provides a solution of the study of commercial geography provides a solution.

viii) The study of commercial geography provides various set of knowledge by which the countries can use their resources properly under good management. This proper use of resources is helpful to overcome the problems like unemployment, hunger and diseases.

In short, it can be said that commercial geography is the science which is related to the study of the distribution of resources, different kinds of human activities and their distribution in the world. It not only provides knowledge about the material resources of the world but also helpful in the development of trade and commerce because the awareness about different kinds of resources. The trade in import and export cannot be successful. The international trade flourished with the knowledge of commercial geography because commercial geography provides knowledge about the distribution of resources in the world and gives a view about the needs and requirements of the countries.

Q.2 Define Commercial Geography and explain how its study helps in knowing the development of commerce in a country. Define Commercial Geography. Describe its scope, importance and advantages in everyday life.

Ans: Commercial Geography

The study of man and his economic activities under varying sets of conditions for the welfare of mankind is called Commercial Geography. It is the knowledge of all activities of man which he adopts for earning livelihood. It gives information about all the resources, activities, institutions and human capabilities which are helpful in earning livelihood.

The Scope of Commercial Geography

Commercial geography has a great scope because it covers a wide range of study about the resources of the world, trade and human economic activities. Its study is not only related with the geographical conditions with respect to production but also related with agricultural industrial and trade activities. The scope of commercial geography can be described as following.

Commercial geography provides knowledge about the division of natural resources among different countries of the world

The study of commercial geography gives information about the agricultural resources and (ii) agricultural production of the world. (iii)

The study of commercial geography helps in knowing about the mineral and energy

resources, their distribution, production and trade.

(vi) Commercial geography provides knowledge about the concentration and localization of industries, industrial production, the distribution of industries and the trade of industrial products throughout the world. (v)

Means of communication and the means of transportation are essential for trade activities therefore, the study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the division and

development of the means of communication and the means of transportation.

(vi) The study of commercial geography gives information about the human population and human resources. Thus its study is helpful in determining the skilled workers and the availability of labourers for the process of production.

Commercial Geography and the Development of Commerce

The study of commercial geography is related to the study of commerce. It gives knowledge about the resources of the world. It presents a picture of the world's production of raw material. It describes about the human population and human resources. The study of commercial geography describes about the industrial production, distribution and transportation. It gives the information about internal and external trade. Thus commercial geography as a subject is helpful in knowing the development of commerce in the world.

The importance and Advantages of the Study of Commercial Geography in Everyday Life

As a subject, the study of commercial geography is related to practical life because it describes the struggle of human beings for earning their livelihood. It describes the economic activities completely, therefore the study of commercial geography has its importance and advantages which can be described as following.

The Students of Commerce

As commerce is the study of trade and business, therefore the study of commercial geography is helpful for the students of commerce. Through the study of commercial geography, the students of commerce become able to determine the right way for obtaining their good future.

(II) Agriculturists

Farmers and cultivators who are associated with agriculture can manage themselves as good agriculturists with the study of commercial geography. The study of commercial geography provides them knowledge about the quality of seeds, fertilizers and methods of good cultivation. With the study of commercial geography, they become aware of modern agricultural equipments and technology and thus they can increase their agricultural production.

(iii) **Economic Experts**

The study of commercial geography has great importance for the economic exports. The study of commercial geography describes them the resources of the world and world's trade therefore they can frame out better economic policies for their own business.

Bankers (iv)

Bankers are related to the banking business. They make their investment and utilize their funds for earning profit. The study of commercial geography guides them to make correct investment for the development of trade and business and for the stability of the banking sector.

Traders

16

ng

The study of commercial geography is useful for the traders. It gives knowledge to the traders about the trade activities of the world. It gives them information about the markets of the world, trade centres and about internal and external trade of different countries. It gives them knowledge for the progress of their business.

The Rulers and the Government

The study of commercial geography has many advantages and importance for the rulers

and the government of a country. It guies the government and rulers about the resources and production which helps them to take steps for the development of trade and business and the

expansion of industries.

In short, the study of commercial geography has its importance and advantages for all the sections of a society. As we all know that the process of earning livelihood and the standard of living of people both play very important role in human life. The study of commercial geography helps in understanding the economic struggle, production, distribution and transportation. With the study of commercial geography, the economic activities can be done in the most organised form, thus not only steps can be taken for the welfare of human beings but trade and business can also be done in a successful manner.

IMPORTANT MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS (MCQs)

Choos	se the correct answer for each of th	he follo	wing from the given options.
(1)	Commercial Geography is a part of:	11	
	(a) Physical Geography	(P)	Economic Geography
	(c) Political Geography	(d)	None of these
(2)	Post, telegram, telephone and television	n are the	means of:
	(a) Transport	(b)	Communication
•	(c) Irrigation	(d)	None of these
(3)	The means through which a message or	r news co	nveyed is:
	(a) Transport	(b) //	Electricity
	(c) Irrigation	(d)>	Communication
(4)	The Geography helps in the study of:		
	(a) Agriculture	(p) 7	Land Surface
	(c) Industry	(d)	Trade
(5)	The percentage of the earth covered by		30% (d) 20%
	(a) 60% (b) 50%	(6)	30% (d) 20%
(6)	The total land area of all the continent.	s is appro	32% (d) 35%
2.7	(a) <u>29%</u> (b) 25%	(c)	
(7)	Commercial grain farming is practiced	in the gr	Equatorial region
	(a) Frigid region	(b) (d), \/	Tundra region
	(c) Temperate region	an augh f	
(8)	The farming which farmers grow only	(b)	Mechanized Farming
	(a) Cultivation	(d)	None of these
	(c) Subsistence Farming	(u)	None of these
(9)	90% of world population lives here: (a) Plateaus (b) Deserts	(c)//	Plains (d) Coastal areas
	(a) Plateaus (b) Deserts The main branches in which the study	of the es	
(10)		(c)	Four (d) Six
	(a) <u>Two</u> (b) Three It is the study of the evolution of the	various fo	orms of land and distribution of anim
(11)	plants along with their environment:	various r	
		(b)	Economic geography
		(d)	Physical geography
()	(c) Social geography Commercial geography is the sub bran		
(12)		(b)	Social Geography
		(d)	Economic Geography
(10)	(c) Mineral Geography In Geography, the word "Geo" means:		
(13)		(c)	Mars (d) Soil
(1.4)	(a) Ocean (b) <u>Earth</u> The study of commercial geography is	the mos	t important for the students of:
(14)	(a) Science (b) Sociology	(c)	Engineering (d) Commerce
-	(a) Science (b) Sociology	(-/	

(15) Economic planning strategy can be made the most effective by the economists with the study of: (a) Geography (b) Engineering (c) Biology (d) Commercial Geography (16) Traders get information about the world's markets and trade centres through the study of: (a) Economics (b) History (c) Commercial Geography (d) Geography (17) The study of this subject provides knowledge to the farmers and cultivators about modern methods of family and the selection of best seeds and fertilizers: (a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Ethics (a) Bankers and investors sort out information about successful investment for the stability of banking sector with the study of: (a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (e) Accounting (f) Economics (g) Commercial Geography (g) Economics (g) Wholesalers (h) Retailers (g) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (a) Commercial Geography (d) Astronomy (e) Geography (f) Georgaphy (h) History (h) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (lt gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	Cole to the	Parameter planning strategy can be ma	do the r	nost effective by the economists with the
(a) Geography (b) Engineering (c) Biology (d) Commercial Geography (16) Traders get information about the world's markets and trade centres through the study of: (a) Economics (b) History (c) Commercial Geography (d) Geography (The study of this subject provides knowledge to the farmers and cultivators about modern methods of family and the selection of best seeds and fertilizers: (a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Ethics (a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Ethics (a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (e) Accounting (f) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (e) Agricultural Technology (f) Geology (g) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (123) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (d) It gives global awareness about trade, resources; industries and economic activities:	(15)	etudo of	ide the i	nost citeday
(c) Biology (d) Commercial Geography (a) Economics (b) History (c) Commercial Geography (d) Geography (t) The study of this subject provides knowledge to the farmers and cultivators about modern methods of family and the selection of best seeds and fertilizers: (a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Ethics (a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Ethics (a) Bankers and investors sort out information about successful investment for the stability of banking sector with the study of: (a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (t) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Computer Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Geography (b) History (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (t) It gives global awareness about trade, resources industries and economic activities:		4	(b)	Engineering
(16) Traders get information about the world's markets and trade centres through the study of: (a) Economics (b) History (c) Commercial Geography (d) Geography (17) The study of this subject provides knowledge to the farmers and cultivators about modern methods of family and the selection of best seeds and fertilizers: (a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Ethics (a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Ethics (a) Bankers and investors sort out information about successful investment for the stability of banking sector with the study of: (a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (19) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:		/ N N 1	(4)	Commercial Geography
(a) Economics (c) Commercial Geography (d) Geography The study of this subject provides knowledge to the farmers and cultivators about modern methods of family and the selection of best seeds and fertilizers: (a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Ethics (a) Bankers and investors sort out information about successful investment for the stability of banking sector with the study of: (a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (19) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	1161	Trades act information about the work	d's marke	ets and trade centres through the study of:
(a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Geography (d) Geography (d) The study of this subject provides knowledge to the farmers and cultivators about modern methods of family and the selection of best seeds and fertilizers: (a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Ethics (a) Bankers and investors sort out information about successful investment for the stability of banking sector with the study of: (a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (19) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Gomputer Technology (c) Morphology (d) Economies (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economies (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Actionomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(10)	(a) Pronomice	(b)	History
(17) The study of this subject provides knowledge to the farmers and cultivators about modern methods of family and the selection of best seeds and fertilizers: (a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Ethics (18) Bankers and investors sort out information about successful investment for the stability of banking sector with the study of: (a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (19) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultura Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (b) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:			(4)	Coography
methods of family and the selection of best seeds and crossess and investors (a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (d) Ethics banking sector with the study of: (a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (19) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (d) Astronomy (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (15) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(1 m)	my to Call and an annuidae know	vledee to	the farmers and cultivators about modern
(a) Botany (b) Geology (c) Commercial Geography (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (d) Commercial Geography (e) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (f) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (a) Commercial Geography (d) Economics (c) Morphology (d) Economics (d) Commercial Geography (d) Economics (e) Geography (d) Astronomy (f) Geography (d) Astronomy (g) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (c) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(17)	The study of this subject provides know	nest seed	S and lettifizers.
(18) Bankers and investors sort out information about successful investment for the stability of banking sector with the study of: (a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (19) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Computer Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (d) Astronomy (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (124) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:		methods of family and the selection of	(c)	Commercial Geography (d) Ethics
banking sector with the study of: (a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (19) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (124) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	()	(a) Botany (b) Geology	tion abo	ut successful investment for the stability of
(a) Business Communication (b) Economics (c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (19) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (124) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(18)	Bankers and investors soft out morning	ition	
(c) Accounting (d) Commercial Geography (19) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:			(b)	Economics
(19) The study of commercial geography gives knowledge about the availability of raw materials production and location and localization of industries to: (a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (b) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:			(4)	Commercial Geography
(a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industrials (d) Bankers (20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(10)	The sends of commercial geography	v gives l	knowledge about the availability of raw
(a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers (c) Industries (d) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (14) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(19)	materials production and location and	localizat	ion of mudstries to
(20) It has changed the world into a global village: (a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (d) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:		(a) Wholesalers (b) Retailers	(c)	Industrials (d) Bankers
(a) Dangerous Weapons (b) Laser Technology (c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (c) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(20)	It has changed the world into a global		
(c) Agricultural Technology (d) Computer Technology (1) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economic activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (d) Ligives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(20)	(a) Dangerous Weapons	(b)	Laser Technology
(21) It gives a perfect analysis of the different environments on man and his different economics (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:		A State of the sta	(4)	Computer Technology
activities: (a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(21)	It gives a perfect analysis of the different	ent envir	onments on man and his different economic
(a) Commercial Geography (b) Geology (c) Morphology (d) Economics (22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(21)	activities:		1
(c) Morphology (d) Economics The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also guides about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (c) Geography (d) Astronomy A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:		(a) Commercial Geography	(b)	
(22) The study of this subject not only describes about natural resources but also gindes about the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:			(d)	Economics
the proper use of them: (a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(22)	The study of this subject not only des	cribes ab	out natural resources but also guides about
(a) Commercial Geography (b) History (c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(/	the proper use of them:		
(c) Geography (d) Astronomy (23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:		(a) Commercial Geography		
(23) A collection of human environment and society is called: (a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:		(c) Geography		
(a) History (b) Civics (c) Science (d) Geography (24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:	(23)	A collection of human environment an	id society	is called:
(24) It gives global awareness about trade, resources, industries and economic activities:		() Iti as a me (b) Civice	(c)	Science (a) Geography
	(24)	It gives global awareness about trade,	resource	s, industries and economic activities:
(a) History (b) Commercial Geography	• •	(a) History	(b)	Commercial Geography
(c) Economics (d) Geography			(d)	Geography



Land

CHAPTER

the foundations of Aercial

IMPORTANT SHORT QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

Define Physical Environment and write down the names of the components Q.1of the Physical Environment.

Ans: Physical Environment

The sum of the total conditions of the surroundings within which an organism or group of organisms exist is called Physical Environment. Physical environment is related to all those conditions within which the economic, social and cultural activities can be carried on. Commercial geography is closely related to physical environment. The study of commercial geography has been organised on the basis of physical environment. Physical environment is also called as Natural Environment or Geographical Environment.

The Components of Physical Environment

The components of factors of a physical environment are following.

- Location **Topography** (iii) (ii) Plateaus
 - (iv) Deserts (vi) Oceans Rivers
- Climate Vegetation and Soil Animals
- Define Physical Geography and describe its scope. How does Physical Geography help in understanding physical environment?

Ans: Physical Geography

The study of all those factors which collectively construct the physical environment of man is called Physical Geography.

The Scope of Physical Geography

Physical geography is concerned with the study over time of the characters, processes and the distribution of the natural phenomera accessible to human beings. The study of physical geography helps in understanding the physical environment because it gives knowledge about the four spheres.

(i) **Atmosphere**

The covering of air around the earth is called Atmosphere. Air is a mixture of gases 20% oxygen, 79% Nitrogen and 0.03% carbondioxide. It also contains the traces of Argon, Krypton, Xenon, Neon, Helium as well as water vapours, ozone, organic matter, some salts and solid particles in suspension.

(ii) Biosphere

The part of the earth crust and atmosphere favourable to at least some form of life, divided into three biocycles salt water, fresh water and land is called Biosphere.

(iii) Hydrosphere

All the waters in the form of liquid or solid of the surface of the earth collectively including soil and ground water is called Hydrosphere.

(iv) Lithosphere

The Earth's crust including its layers and physical forms is called Lithosphere. It is found

in the form of mountains, lands, plateaus and the layers of the soil.

Describe the Rotation and Revolution of the Earth. Q.3

Ans: The Earth

The planet in the universe where man lives is called the Earth. It is a flattened sphere. It is fifth in size and third in order from the sum of the nine planets of the solar system. The polar diameter of the Earth is 12712km while the equatorial diameter is 12755km. The polar circumference of the Earth is 40008km while its equatorial diameter is 400076 km.

The axis of the Earth is an imaginary line which runs from the North Pole to the South Pole and also passes through the centre of the Earth at an angle of 661/2° to the plane of its orbit.

The Movement of the Earth

The Management of the Earth in space can be described as following.

(i) Rotation of the Earth

The revolving movement of the Earth on its axis from the West to the East is called Rotation of the Earth. It completes one complete round in every 24 hours. The velocity of the rotation of the Earth is about 1690 km/hr at the Equator. Day and night are formed because of the rotation of the Earth.

Revolution of the Earth (ii)

The movement of the Earth on its orbit round the sun is called Revolution of the Earth. The Earth takes 3651/4 days to complete its one revolution. Due to the revolution of the Earth, the seasons of the year are formed and different length of day and night are occurred at different

Define the following terms: Q.4

(i) Latitude Longitude

Ans:(i) Latitude

The angular distance of any point on the Earth's surface North or South of the equator as measured from the centre of the Earth, in degrees, minutes and seconds is called Latitude.

[iii] Longitude

The imaginary half circles which are drawn from the North Pole to the South Pole are called Longitude. The lines of longitude are used to determine the time of different places. They also help to determine the position of a place East or West from another place. Longitudes are generally called as Meridians.

(iiii) Equator

An imaginary great circle round the Earth in plane perpendicular to the earth's axis and equidistant between the North and South poles and thus dividing the Earth into Northern and the Southern poles is called Equator.

Describe the division of the world in different zones on the basis of Q.5 temperature conditions.

Ans: The Division of the World on the Basis of Temperature

The world has been divided into several zones or belts on the basis of temperature which are following. (i)

Tropical or Torrid Zone

The places that are located between 231/2° North (Tropic of Cancer) and 231/2° South (Tropic of Capricorn) are called as Tropical or Torrid Zone. The places within the tropics get the most direct and fiercest rays of the sun throughout the year. On 21st June the sun shines overhead on the tropic of cancer and on 22nd December, the sun shines overhead on the Tropic of Capricorn. In the Northern Hemisphere 21st June is the longest day while 22nd December is the shortest day. The 21st June is known as summer solstice while 22nd December is known as Winter Solstice.

(ii) The Temperate Zone

The places which are located between 23½° and 66½° latitudes are collectively called as The Temperate Zone. These places have moderate temperature. These are further classified into North Temperate Zone and South Temperate.

(iii) The Frigid Zone

The places which are located 66½° and 90° latitudes are collectively called as The Frigid Zone. It is located beyond the Arctic and Antarctic Circles. The rays of the sun strike so slantingly that there is no season of heat at all here. All the year it is extremely cold, therefore it is known as the Frigid Zone. It is further classified into the North Frigid Zone and the South Frigid Zone.

Q.6 Define Map and describe its kinds.

Ans: Map

A representation of the surface of the Earth with locations and conditions is called Map.

Kinds of Map

There are two important kinds of Map.

(i) Physical Map

A map which shows the physical features, natural resources, oceans, climate, rainfall, rivers and ocean currents is called Physical Map.

(ii) Political Map

The map which shows the administrative division of the world in countries, cities, provinces etc. is called Political Map.

Q.7 Write down the names of the oceans of the world.

Ans: The Oceans of the World

The names of the oceans of the world are following.

- (i) Pacific Ocean (ii)
 - (ii) Antarctic Ocean (iii)
- (iv) Indian Ocean (v) Arctic Ocean

Q.8 Write down the names of the important climatic regions of the world

(v)

(v)

Ans: Important Climatic Regions of the World

Important climatic regions of the world are following.

- (i) Equatorial Region
- (ii) Tundra Region (iii)
- Monsoon Region

- (iv) Mediterranean Region
- Steep Region
- Paririe Region

(vi)

Q.9 Define Winds and describe the classification of Winds.

Aps: Winds

Air in motion which shows varying strength of its vertical movement as air currents is known as Winds.

Classification of Winds

Winds blowing in the world are classified as following.

- (i) Permanent Winds
- (ii) Variable Winds (iii)
- Seasonal Winds

- (iv) Local Winds
- Easterlies
- Westerlies

Q.10 Define the following terms:

- (i) Ocean Waves
- (ii) Ocean Tides (iii)
- Ocean Currents

Ans:(i) Ocean Waves

The oscillatory movements in the sea water, manifested by an alternate rise and fall of the sea surface are called as Ocean Waves or Sea Waves.

(ii) Ocean Tides

The sea water regularly rises and falls twice a day. This periodic rise and fall of the sea water is known as Ocean Tides.



There are following two types of ocean tides.

On new moon and full moon, the sun and the Earth are in one time, therefore the sun and (i) the moon both exert their combined gravitational effects on the Earth which result in highes tides in ocean which are known as Spring Tides.

When the moon is at first and last quarter, the sun and the moon make a right angle at the (ii) centre of the Earth. Thus the attraction of the sun and the moon tends to balance each other. As a result tides with lowest amplitude occur these tides are known as Neap Tides.

(iii) Ocean Currents

The general movements of the mass of the surface water which defines the direction of movement are called Ocean Currents. There are two types of ocean currents which are warm currents and cold currents.

Q.11 Define the following terms:

Ocean

(ii) Sea (iii)

Ans:(i) Ocean

The sheet of salt water which surrounds the great land mass and divided the continents separate from each other is called as Ocean. There are five oceans in the world which are following:

(i) Pacific Ocean (ii) Atlantic Ocean (iii)

Indian Ocean

Arctic Ocean (iv)

Antarctic Ocean (v)

(iii) Sea

One of the smaller divisions of the ocean which is partially enclosed by land is called Sea. Some common examples of seas are following.

Mediterranean Sea (i)

Arabian Sea

(iii) Baltic Sea

(iii)

A wide indentation into the land which is formed by the sea or a lake is called Bay. For example Bay of Bengal.

Q.12 Define the following terms:

Gulf (ii) Strait

Ans:(i) Gulf

A large inlet of the sea, cutting into the land more deeply than a bay and is enclosed by the coast is called Gulf. For example Persian Gulf, Gulf of Mexico.

(ii)

A narrow stretch of sea connecting two extensive areas of oceans or seas is called Strait. For example Strait of Phosphorus connects Black Sea with Mediterrenean Sea.

(iiii)

A piece of narrow horn shaped land juting out into the sea is called Cape.

Q.13 Define the following terms:

Peninsula (i)

Island (ii)

(iii) Isthmus

Ans:(i) Peninsula

A tract of land which may be large or small, projecting into a body of water, near surrounded by water on at least three sides is called Peninsula.

Island (ii)

A naturally formed piece of land entirely surrounded by water and above water is called Island: A small island is called as Isle while a very small island is called as an Islet.

(iii) Isthmus

A narrow strip of land, with water on each side, connecting two larger land masses is called Isthmus.

Q.14 Define the following terms:

- (i) Delta
- (ii) Isotherms
- (iii) Isobars

- (iv) Hinterland
- (v) Climate

Ans:(i) Delta

A triangular shaped flood plain which is transversed by the tributaries of a river at its mouth called as Delta. A delta is formed when a river deposits solids material at its mouth. As these deposits grow, the river splits and make new channels. For example Indus Delta.

(ii) <u>Isotherms</u>

The lines which are drawn on the map and show the places that have same average monthly temperature at sea level are called Isotherms.

(iii) Isobars

The lines which are drawn on the map and show all those places which have same air pressure changes during a particular period are called as Isobars.

(iv) Hinterland

The district behind a settlement of a coast and especially the area which is served by a port is known as Hinterland.

(v) Climate

The average weather conditions throughout the seasons over a fairly or very extensive area of the Earth's surface and considered over many years is called Climate.

Q.15 Define the following terms:

(i) Business

(ii) Trade

(iii) Commerce

Ansili) Business

A particular organization through which the production of commodities or services is made possible for earning profit along with the fulfillment of the requirements of a society is called Business.

(ii) Trade

A collection of all those activities which are done among the manufacturers and the consumers for the exchange of goods is called Trade.

(iii) Commerce

A collection of all those activities which are related to the production and exchange of goods along with finance, insurance, storage and transportation is called Commerce. Commerce is actually is the sum of all those activities which transfer the goods and services from the producers to the consumers directly or indirectly.

Q.16 Define Commercial Activities and describe the classification of Commercial Activities.

Ans: Commercial Activities

The activities which are adopted to make human life better by using resources from a specific environment are called Commercial Activities.

Classification of Commercial Activities

Commercial activities are classified into following groups.

(i) Primary Activities

The commercial activities which are related to the extraction of natural resources from the Earth and man gets direct benefits from the resources obtained from the Earth and geographical environment are called Primary Activities. Agriculture, Hunting, Fishing, Forestry, Mining etc. are included in Primary Activities.



Secondary Activities (ii)

The commercial activities which are involved in transforming of raw materials into products by manufacturing are called Secondary Activities. All types of manufacturing are included in secondary activities.

(iii) **Tertiary Activities**

The commercial activities in which services are added to other commercial activities in order to increase the utility are called as Tertiary Activities. Transportation, communication, banking and other services are included in Tertiary Activities. These activities are further classified into Direct Service Sector, Quarternary Activities and Quinary Activities.

Q.17 Describe briefly the sub-division of Tertiary Commercial Activities.

Ans: Sub-Division of Tertiary Commercial Activities

Tertiary commercial activities are related to increase the utility of primary and secondary activities. Sub-division of tertiary activities is following.

Direct Service Sector

The sector which provides different kinds of services is known as Direct Service Sector. Skilled, semi-skilled and technitians provide their services in this sector. It is further classified into two groups. In the first group, the services of trade, transport, banking and finance are included. The services provided through telecommunication and media are also included in this group. In the second group, all the services of skilled and semi-skilled workers are included.

Quarternary Activities (ii)

The services which are provided by highly professionals and qualified persons are collectively classified as Quarternary Activities. The managers, executives, financing consultants and others perform Quarternary Activities.

(iii) Quinary Activities

The services provided by highly experienced and highly qualified persons are collectively known as Quinary Activities. These are completely professional activities performed by the most prominent persons holding high level positions. Research scientists, financial advisors, astronauts and others perform Quinary Activities.

Q.18 Describe the major differences between Economic Activities Commercial Activities.

Ans: Difference b/w Commercial and Economic Activities

The human activities which are performed for earning money are called as Economic Activities. These activities are associated with production, consumption and consuming goods. In economic activities, human physical and intellectual efforts are used to make the resources beneficial for the production of wealth. When these economic activities are done on large scale for commercial transactions then these activities are termed as commercial activities.

The major differences between Economic Activities and Commercial Activities are that commercial activities are done on large scale with the exchange of goods, receiving and paying, transportation and communication. On the contrary, economic activities are done on small scale with intellectual, physical and practical human efforts.

Q.19 Describe the role of secondary activities in the growth of developed countries.

Ans: Role of Secondary Activities in the Growth of Developed

The commercial activities which are involved in transforming raw materials which is obtained from initial activities into usable products by manufacturing are called ... Secondary Activities. Different kinds of manufacturing industries and manufacturing processes of different goods collectively considered as Secondary Activities. These activities play their important role in :[ī]

de

hly

ITE

E

ũ

n

Iqra Commercial Geography for Class X he development of advanced and developed countries. These activities organize the industrial sector which is the backbone of the economy of a country.

Q.20 Write down a note on Interrelation of Commercial Activities.

Ans: Interrelation of Commercial Activities

Commercial activities are classified into three main groups which are Primary activities, secondary activities and tertiary activities. All the commercial activities are interrelated. In primary activities man gets benefits directly from natural resources from the earth and geographical environment. The procedure related to primary activities was adopted by man during his early period of history. As time passed man got information about the transformation of materials which obtained from primary activities. Through the process of manufacturing, the utility of products is increased. Man develops various kinds of industries by using his mental and physical power then these manufactured products are used for sale. Primary and secondary activities are thus interrelated. For example the production of cotton by agriculture is a primary activity but when cotton is used in industrial process and cloth is manufactured by it then it is now called as Secondary Activity. In tertiary commercial activity, services are added to primary and secondary activities. Tertiary commercial activities are related with services, not related to the production of tangible commodities. Trade and commerce is an important tertiary commercial activity. By the system of trade and commerce agricultural products, mineral products, machinery and the import and export of the other goods are organized. In tertiary commercial activities people provide their services in private and public sector. Tertiary commercial activities are further classified into direct service sector, quaternary and quinary commercial activities.

Write any five suitable factors for the trade between two countries.

Ans: Suitable Factors for the Trade between Two Countries

Five suitable factors which are necessary for the trade between two countries are following:

Land Location

Area and Structure

Mountains and Plateaus

Rivers and Lakes

Means of Transportation (v) Need of Commodities and ability to purchase

Q.22 Name any five factors which affect the commercial activities.

Ans: The Factors Affecting Commercial Activities

The names of the factors that affect the commercial activities are following.

The Land Location (i)

(iv)

(v)

(ii) Plains (iii) Mountains and Plateaus

(v) Oceans

What role does a port play in the development of a country? Q.23

Ans: The Role of Port in the Development of a Country

The role of a port in the development of a country can be described as following.

A sea port provides better facilities for the anchoring of ships. (i)

There are facilities available at good sea port for loading and exporting of the commercia (ii)

A good seaport helps in the organization of foreign trade both in export and import of (iii) commodities.

A good arrangement system is present for the storage and preservation of commercia (iv) goods on a good seaport. Thus a good seaport flourishes the international trade and plays a very important role i

the development of a country.

Describe the reasons of the need of the trade between different countries. 0.24

The Reasons of the Need of Trade between Different Countries Ans:

The reasons of the trade between different countries of the world are following. Natural resources are unevenly distributed among various countries of the world.

and is accumulated in xylein vessels.

The production of various commodities and services is different among different countries (ii) of the world.

Physical environment and climatic conditions of different countries is difficult. (iii)

- The consumption of goods and services is variable, therefore the surplus production of (iv) goods is transferred where its need is present.
- The development and progress in the means of transportation and communication plays a (v) role to create the need of trade between different countries.
- Write five sentences on the efforts of physical environment on human life Q.25 and commercial activities.

The Effects of Physical Environment Ans:

The effect of physical environment on life and commercial activities can be described as following.

Physical environment of a certain region determines the pattern of life like food, shelter (i) and clothing.

Physical environment influences the health, structure and complexion of people. (ii)

Physical environment of a certain region determines the customs, traditions and culture of (iii) people.

Physical environment of a place helps the people to adopt certain professions thus it (iv) determines the occupational structure.

- Physical environment also organizes the economic life and commercial activities of a (v) certain region.
- Q.26 Define the term "Trade" and describe the kinds of trade.

Ans: Trade

The process which is adopted economically and technologically for the exchange of goods and services is called Trade.

Kinds of Trade

There are two kinds of trade which are following.

Domestic Trade (1)

The trade which is the source of distribution goods, their sale and purchase w country is called Domestic Trade. Domestic trade is further classified into to types.

Whole-Sale Trade (i)

The trade activities of domestic trade in which the exchange of goods is done among producers, wholesalers and consumers is called Whole-Sale Trade. In this Trade, a large quantity of goods is purchased from the manufacturers and then it is supplied to the consumers and retailers.

Retail Trade

(ii) The process of trade in which goods are provided to the consumers is called Retail Trade. ial A retailer purchases goods from a whole-saler then sells them to consumers.

External Trade

No country of the world is self-sufficient in all necessities of life. The deficient needs are (2) through their purchase from other countries and surplus commodities are sold to other countries. ial This trade is called External Trade.

The external trade is classified into following two types.

Export Trade

The external trade in which surplus quantity of goods is sold to other countries for earning in (i) foreign exchange is called Export Trade.

Import Trade The external trade in which goods are purchased from other countries in order to fulfill the (ii) domestic needs of a country is called Import Trade.



Q.27 Write down the names of factors which help in the development of Trade.

Ans: The Factors for the Development of Trade

The factors which help in the development of trade are following. These factors are collectively known as Auxiliaries to Trade.

- (i) Banking
- (ii) Insurance
- (iii) Storage and Warehousing
- (iv) Transportation (v) Information (vi) Standardization and Grading

Q.28 Write down any five advantages of International Trade.

Ans: The Advantages of International Trade

Five advantages of International Trade are following.

- (i) International trade provides the commodities related to necessities of life on large scale.
- (ii) International trade creates a link among different countries of the world, thus its play a great role in industrial research.
- (iii) International trade helps the countries to transfer their over population to other countries for earning foreign exchange.
- (iv) International trade helps different countries to make correct use of their productive resources.
- (v) International trade helps in the extension of free markets in the world-
- Q.29 Write down any five disadvantages of International Trade.

Ans: The Disadvantages of International Trade

Five disadvantages of International Trade can be described as following.

- (i) International trade has a great disadvantage because it makes progressing countries dependent on the production of other countries.
- (ii) International trade gives a status to some countries in specific production, if the demand of such production falls in the international market then there is a risk of producing economic depression.
- (iii) International trade also promotes the trade of lawful and immoral commodities.
- (iv) International trade can produce the risk of unemployment in case unfavourable competition.
- (v) International trade produces an obstacle in the development of poor countries.
- Q.30 Define Climate. Write down any five effects of climate on human life.

Ans: Climate

The long lasting conditions of weather in a particular area or country is called as Climate. The weather conditions related to the climate are included air pressure, temperature, humidity and rainfall.

The Effects of the Climate

The effects of climate on human life are following.

- (i) The extreme cold climate produces its effects on economic activities of a certain region.
- (ii) The climate produces its effects on professions. People adopt different kinds of professions according to their climate.
- (iii) The climate also produces its effects on way of living. In these areas, where the rate of rainfall is great, wood is used in the construction of the houses and the roofs are made in slope.
- (iv) The climate also produces its effects on dresses. The people living in various regions use different kinds of dresses.
- (v) The climate also increases on the food of humans. In the mountainous region people use meat, maize, jawar and fruits because they need large quantity of food to keep their body warm. The basic food of the people living in coastal areas is fish.

IMPORTANT DETAILED TYPE QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q.1 Define Physical Environment and describe the components of physical environment in detail.

Ans: Physical Environment

The sum of total conditions of the surroundings within which an organism or group of organisms exists is called Physical Environment. Physical environment is related to all those conditions within which the economic, social and cultural activities can be carried on. Physical environment is also called as Natural Environment or Geographical Environment.

The Components of Physical Environment

The components of physical environment can be described as following.

(i) Location

The geographical situation of a thing or place on the Earth is called Location. Location has great importance for the progress of a country. Those countries which are located far away from the ocean, their trade activities become more difficult as compared to those which are situated near oceans. For example Singapore, Rangoon and Colombo which are situated at water ways, therefore their trade is established.

(ii) Topography

The study of the surface area of the Earth is called Topography. Mountains are present in the fifth part of the Earth and they are prominent physical features of the Earth. Those countries which are situated on mountains are less-developed countries. The construction of roads and railways on the mountains is a hard task and it also consumes a large amount of capital. The agriculture is also a difficult work on the mountains, rain gets flow with the soil and hard stones are appeared from the lower surface. The soil on the mountains is also not fertile.

The crop area on mountains is also much smaller, but here it is observable that some crops are cultivated on mountains only like tea, coffee and cocoa beans etc. some advantages mountains can be described as following.

(1) Forests grow on mountains.

- (2) Natural forests on mountains provide wood and other resources.
- The climate changes occur due to the forests on the mountains.
- (4) Mining mountains is a commercial activity. Minerals are obtained from mountains.
- (5) Rivers and streams come out from mountains which irrigate land areas.
- (6) Hydroelectricity is generated from the streams of mountains.
- (7) Natural defence is obtained through mountains.
- (8) Sheeps and goats are kept easily by providing them food from the vegetation of the mountains.

(iii) <u>Plateaus</u>

A markedly elevated tract comparatively flat or level land usually bounded one or more slopes which drop to lower land is called Plateaus. Like mountains plateaus are not so beneficial from economic point of view because there is shortage of water on plateaus. Agriculture cannot be done on large scale on plateaus but plateaus are used for keeping sheeps and goats. Minerals are also found in plateaus.

(iv) Land

The flat parts of the Earth are called as Land. 90% of the world's population live in the flat parts of the world. Lands are the centre of civilization and culture. World greatest countries are situated in these parts. The old civilizations were organized in these. The road and railways can be constructed easily in these parts. 85% of railway lines have been found in these parts. The facilities of transport all over the world are found in these parts. The world greatest trade centres are also established in these parts.

(v) Deserts

The regions where annual rate of rainfall is less than ten inches are called Deserts. Water is found in very small quantity in deserts. Agriculture and cultivation is not possible in deserts due to shortage of water. The major occupation of people in deserts is animal keeping. The nomadic life is the fate of people who live in deserts.

(vi) Oceans

Two-third part of the world are oceans which produce profound effect on the economic progress of the world. The regions which are near to the oceans get more progress. Oceans are natural and international ways and means of transportation. These are such highways which require no expenditure. Salt, Potash and Phosphates are also obtained from the sea water. Coastal areas have great importance for fishing industry.

(vii) Rivers

Rivers play very prominent role in the agricultural development. Those countries which have dry climate, rivers produce there the signs of life. For example the agricultural economy of Pakistan, Egypt, Iraq etc. depends upon the canals which come out from rivers. In Pakistan, lands are irrigated by the canals of rivers, the canal system of Pakistan is considered one of the best canal system of the world. In present age, industrial progress is also necessary with agricultural progress. Hydroelectricity is generated from rivers. Due to hydroelectricity production, Japan is considered as developed country.

(viii) <u>Climate</u>

The climate has a close relation with the economic and commercial progress of a region. Temperature, air pressure, hotness, light, air and water are the major elements of the climate which help in the proper growth of man, animals, plants, fruits, flowers and cultivation. The climate produces its effects on every sector of life. The effects of the climate can be observed on animals, buildings, food, agriculture, dress, means of transportation, health, efficiency of labour and culture.

(ix) Vegetation and Soil

There is a close relation between vegetation and soil. Soil is a components of physical environment. It is a composition of water, biological and mineral components. Vegetation depends upon soil and human and animal life depend upon vegetation. Vegetation is the important element of natural environment.

(x) Animals

Animals are also an important part of physical environment. Plants and animals both have interrelationship. The production of one depends on the other. Animals and plants both constitute a food chain.

Q.2 Define Commercial Activities, describe the classification of Commercial Activities.

Ans: Commercial Activities

The methods which are adopted to exchange the goods and services in order to make human life better by using the resources from the specific physical environment are collectively called as Commercial Activities.

Classification of Commercial Activities

Commercial Activities are classified into following groups

(i) Primary Activities

The activities in which man gots direct benefits from the Earth and the geographical environment are called Primary Commercial Activities. The procedure related to primary activities was adopted by man during his early period of history. These activities are limited and only related to subsistence production. Forests, pastures, fish, minerals and birds are the natural resources of food. Man adopted Prey, fishing, purposeful tending of live stock, mining, agriculture, forestry and other commercial activities to take advantages from these natural resources. Initially, these kind of

activities were limited only to fulfill the food and other requirements and there was no trend of trade. These primitive activities were included fishing, prey and wood-cutting. Man started to use the natural resources of his environment by his labour and craft. He developed the methods of fishing and used fish as food. He received his food by hunting. He used the cutting of wood for obtaining fuel, later the wood was used in making useful things. Agricultural activities were started by throwing waste fruits and this increased the fertility of soil which was observed them man started to grow and cultivate crops. Thus agricultural activities were organised and converted into commercial activities. Man produced fruits, vegetables and other food crops and started to sell

Agriculture

Agriculture is included in primary activities. It is the procedure of growing crops for the subsistence of the producers or for sale and exchange. Subsistence agriculture provides food for many families. Farming is the predominant occupation of mankind even today. Intensive subsistence agriculture involves the cultivation of small land holdings while extensive subsistence agriculture involves the cultivation over a large area. Commercial agricultural involves the trade of agricultural produce.

(ii) Herding

The purposeful tending of animals is called Herding. It is included in primary activities. Nomadic or subsistence herding is an extensive form of animal grazing an natural pastures. A wide variety of animals like sheeps, goats, camels and cattle is kept for transportation and food. In the sparesly populated and semi-arid regions of the world, where agricultural activities are greatly hindered because of unfavourable climate and soil, people are generally engaged in the practice of cattle rearing in which large numbers of cattle, sheeps, goats and horses are kept. Commercial dairy farming is also related with herding. Mixed farming is also included in primary activities in which crop farming and commercial rearing of livestock both are organized together for the subsistence or commercial purposes.

Fishing is included in primary activities. Fishing is one of the oldest occupation of man. Hunting of fish subsistence is the main occupation of many low ranking countries of third world. Now fishing is an important occupation of many nations of the world. Commercial fishing is done as northern water activities.

(iv) Forestry

Forestry is also included in the primary commercial activities. Forests provided shelter and productive environment for earlier societies that substituted on gathering fruits, nuts, berries, leaves, roots and fibres collected from trees and woody plants. Forests now provide timber for construction and also provide material for paper, rayon, furniture and other commercial products.

(v) Mining

Minning is also included in primary activities. It is the process to obtaining minerals from the Earth. After the primitive stone age, copper age began as man discovered copper from mines and learnt its utility. The actual exploration of the Earth started with the industrial revolution. With the passage of time, mineral extraction has become common and commercial economic activity.

(2) Secondary Activities

The commercial activities which are included in the transformation of raw material which is obtained from primary activities into final products by the process of manufacturing are called Secondary Activities. Different kinds of industries and their manufacturing processes are classified as Secondary Activities.

Manufacturing is the process which gives the base for secondary activities. It is the process through which the utility of initial products or raw-materials. It increases the value of raw-material. Man has developed various kinds of industries by using his physical and mental power. Some examples of secondary activities are following.



The production of furniture from wood is secondary activity. 0

When the cotton is used in industrial process and cloth is manufactured by it then it is (11)

The manufacturing of steel from iron and the manufacturing of machinery from steel are (iii)

secondary activities.

The cooking of meal from vegetables and meat is a secondary activity. Secondary commercial activities are actually related with the production and the process of (iv) production is related to industry. Industry and types of industry can be described as following.

All those human activities which are related to the production of goods and services are Industry called collectively as Industry. Industry is a well-organized economic process. It adds utility to raw material and converts it into new thing.

Types of Industry

Important types of industry are following.

(i)

Such industries through which other industries come out are called Heavy Industries. There are also called as Basic Industries. Heavy equipments and machines are used in these industries. Coal mines, steel industry, ship building industry etc. are the examples of heavy industries.

Such industries which are involved in the manufacturing of light goods are called Light (ii) Industries. Light industries are further classified into following kinds

Extracting Industries These industries which are involved in obtaining different things and different materials (2) from the Earth are called Extracting Industries. These industries work for making the natural resources useful. Forestry, Fishing, Minning are the examples of extracting industries

Analytical Industries

Those industries which are involved in obtaining the fractions Industries. For example different fractions are obtained from Petroleum.

Synthetic Industries

Those industries in which various components are joined together in order to obtain new products are called Synthetic Industries. The industries of making things from glass and iron are included in Synthetic Industries.

Manufacturing Industries

Those industries which are involved in the process of preparation through various steps are called Manufacturing Industries. Steel industry and textile industry are the examples.

Similarly the industries are classified into primary industries and secondary industries. In primary industries those industries are included which directly obtain production from natural resources. Agriculture, mining, fishing and forestry are included in primary industries. On the contrary, those industries which manufacture useful products from the raw material obtained from primary industries are called Secondary Industries.

Tertiary Activities (3)

The commercial activities in which services are added to primary and secondary activities to increase the utility in the manufacturing process are called Tertiary Activities.

Sub-Division of Tertiary Activities

Tertiary activities are further classified into following groups.

Direct Service Sector - (i)

The sector which provides different kinds of services is called Direct Service Sector. It is further classified into two groups. In the first group, the services of trade, transport, banking and finance are included. The services provided through telecommunication and media are also related

to this group. In the second group, all the services provided by skilled and semi-skilled workers are included.

Quartenary Activities

(ii) The services provided by highly professionals and qualified persons are known as Quarternary Activities. The managers, financing consultants and other perform quaternary activities.

Quinary Activities (iii)

The services provided by highly experienced and highly qualified persons are known as Quinary Activities. These are professional activities which are performed by the most prominent persons holding high level positions. Research scientists, financial advisors, astronauts, legal authorities, legislators, planners, head of a state and others perform quinary activities.

Describe the classification of Natural Environment and explain its factors.

Ans: The Classification of Natural Environment

The area of land with different climatic conditions where man lives is called "Natural Environment". The Earth's surface is covered with plains, mountains and oceans and different types of vegetation and soils. The way man makes use of natural environment depends upon his technical skills and value system. Great variations are found on the Earth's surface. The major relief features of the Earth are the great uplands, or the continents there are elevations like mountains, plateaus and plains and depressions like lakes, rivers and seas. Human activities in each of one landforms differ from each other. Thus totality of man's surroundings is called Natural Environment.

The classification of the Natural Environment can be described with the help of following chart. tural Environment Weather and Clin Physical Environment Flora Landforms Fauna Water Light Wind Humidity Air

Pressure Temperature The classification of Natural Environment has been shown in above chart, thus natural environment is classified into two groups which are following.

Physical Environment (1)

Physical environment is related to the ecosysem of the Earth. It describes the presence of water, natural vegetation, kinds of animals and land forms, so physical environment is further classified into following divisions.

Fauna (i)

All types of animals found in a particular region of the Earth are collectively known as Fauna. These animals are further classified into Herbivores, Carnivores, Omnivores and Insectivores. Herbivores are plant taking animals, carnivores are those who feed upon the flesh of other animals, omnivores feed upon both plants and animals while insectivores are those animals who feed upon insects.



Water is the second constitutent of the physical environment. Water is classified into fresh (ii) water and marine water. Fresh water is obtained from rivers, ponds, sreams and ponds while marine water is obtained from oceans and seas.

All types of plants found in a particular region on this Earth collectively called as Flora. It (iii) is related to Natural Vegetation. Grasslands and Desert Vegetations are the classification of Flora. Grasslands are those areas where mostly plants grow in the form of grasses. Desert vegetation is further divided into Hot Desert Vegetation and Cold Desert Vegetation.

(iv)

The surface features of the Earth is known as Land Forms. The plain areas, the mountains, Land Forms the platues, the deserts are different land forms.

Weather and Climate

Weather and Climate is also considered as an important part of the Natural Environment. (2) Weather and climate both are related to the air pressure, air temperature, wind speed and humidity. Weather and Climate have a close relation with the economic and commercial progress. Temperature, humidity, air pressure, hotness, light, air and water are the major elements of the weather and climate which help in proper growth of man, animals, trees, fruits, flowers and vegetation. Weather and climate both produce their effects on every section of life.

How do the specific and relative locations affect the choice of commercial Q.4 activities in a region? Explain.

Ans: The Effects of Locations on Commercial Activities

The choice of commercial activities depends upon the locations, thus there is a close linkage between physical environment and the choice of commercial activities. The mineral and natural resources all over the world are not same. Land location of a country produces great effect on its commercial activities. If a country is situated at the centre geographically with respect to its nearing countries then it cannot establish trade relations with the other countries of the world. The countries which are surrounded by seas and oceans, trade become flourished there like Japan and Britain where the trade is done by using water ways. Sea shores and sea ports are also play their role in trade progress. Karachi Sea Port is the best example in this respect. The countries where the construction of roads and railways is difficult are not able to establish organized industries. Mineral resources, soil and forest are also helpful in the development of commercial activities. The countries where soil is fertile agricultural activities grow there while the countries which are rich in mineral resources are known as industrial countries. The countries which are thick in forests establish the trade of raw materials. The effects of the choice of commercial activities can be described as following.

The Effect of Specific Location

The exact place or site where a commercial activity is carried on is called Specific Location. (i) We can present the specific location of Karachi port in this respect. Similarly the area between Jehlum-Chenab and Rawi-Chenab is the specific location for the growth of cotton crop. This region is fertile with good alluvial soil, high temperature and good irrigation facilities for the growth of cotton crop. Thus Karachi Port is the specific location which helps in the organization of sea-trade and Rachna Doab is the specific location which helps in the organization of commercial activities related to agriculture particularly for the cultivation of cotton.

The Effect of Relative Location

The position where a commercial activity is organized with the relation of other connected features is known as Relative Location. Relative location also produces its effects on the choice of commercial activity. As Karachi Port is a specific location for entering ships. Therefore, it also organizes horizontal relationship to promote trade through ocean routes. Similarly the region where the cultivation of cotton is done is the specific location for the production of cotton but it also serves as a relative location because it provides help in the promotion of cotton industries in Pakistan with the organization of horizontal relationship. Many cotton mills have been established in Pakistan surrounded by the specific location of the production of cotton.

IMPORTANT MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS - MCQs

Cho	ose the correct answer for each of the f	ollow	ing from the	give	n options:
(1)	The temperature of the countries nears to the			•	
` '	(a) Very Low (b) Very High		Moderate	(4)	None of these
(2)	The more populated area than other places		Moderate	(4)	Hone of these
\- /	(a) Plateau (b) Mountain		Diain	(4)	Desert
(3) .		(c)	<u>Plain</u>	(a)	Desert
(0)	Friendly bilateral relations are compulsory f (a) Hate (b) Trade		-	(1)	N
(4)	(5)	(c)	Threat	(a)	None of these
(1)	These lines are helpful to determine the gen (a) Longitude (b) Parallel Lines	eral te	mperature con		
(5.)	() =	(c)	Latitudes	(d)	Straight Lines
(3,)	This map shows administrative zones such a (a) Political Map (b) World Map	as cou	itries, province	s, citi	es and harbours:
(6)		(c)	Physical Map	(d)	Anyone
(0)	A narrow piece of land joining two large ma	sses of	land is called:		
(7)	(a) Strait (b) Bay	(c)	<u>Isthmus</u>	(<u>a</u>)	An Island
(7)	The means through which a message or new	s conv	eyed is:		
(0)	(a) Transport (b) Electricity	· (c)	Irrigation	(d)	Communication
(8)	A piece of land surrounded by ocean on thre	e side	s is called:		0.172.11
(0)	(a) Bay (b) Cape	(c)	Island	(d)	Peninsula
(9)	The imaginary lines drawn from the North P	ole to	the South Pole	are c	alled:
(10)	(a) Straight Lines (b) Latitutdes	(c)	Longitudes	(d)	Parallel Lines
(10)	The main occupation of the people living in	coasta	areas is:		
(11)	(a) Cattle rearing (b) Fishing	(c)	Carpentry	(d)	Agriculture
(11)	In the day time, the breeze blowing from the	sea to	wards land is	called	
(10)	(a) Monsoon wind (b) Cold wind	(C)	Sea breeze	(d)	Land breeze
(12)	The part of the land which is surrounded by	the se	a is called:	-	7-51 1-1
	(a) Bay (b) Caps	(c)	Island	(b)	Peninsula
(13)	A narrow inlet of sea which connects two ex	tensiv	e areas of ocea	ns is	called:
	(a) Strait (b) Bay	(c)	Gulf	(d)	Isthmus
(14)	Cultural environment consists of:			_ `-/	
	(a) <u>Man-made things</u>	(b)	Exported iten	ns	
	(c) Imported items		Raw-material		
(15)	Plains are suitable for:	(/	Turi material		
	(a) Agriculture (b) Industries	(c)	Transportatio	n/d)	All -Cal
(16)	Mountains and plateaus are not suitable for:	(0)	Transportation	m(a)	All of these
	(a) Agriculture (b) Industries		T	(1)	
(17)	These are mostly found in plateaus:	(c)	Transportation	n(a)	All of them
	(a) Forests (b) Trees	(-)			ena dire
(18)		(c)	Minerals	(d)	Animals
,,	Rivers play very important role in the production (a) Thermal Energy(b) Nuclear Energy				
(19)		(c)	Solar Energy	(d)	Hydro Electricity
(10)	The world wide area which is covered by oce (a) One-third (b) Two-third				\$40,4570 E11,4400
(20)		(c)	Half	(d)	Three-forth
(20)	Soil plays great role in the development of:				回整型
(21)	(a) Agriculture (b) Industry	(c)	Transportation	n(d)	Trade
(21)	The influence of climate is more marked on:		¥	(4)	**##
	(a) Industry (b) Agriculture	(c)	Internal Trad	(۱۲) م	External Tr.
22)	Mining is included in:	(3)	IIdu	e (u)	External Trade
	(a) Primary activities	(b)	Second		
		(0)	Secondary ac	tivitie	es

(36)

(37)

(38)

(39)

(40)

(a)

(c)

(a)

(a)

(a)

(a)

The meaning of Trade is:

Retailors

Plains

Gulf

Eruope

Production of goods

Raw material is produced for:

Exchange of goods and services

The average rate of rainfall is very low here:

The Amazon basin is situated in this continent:

(b) Wholesellers

(b) Mountains

(b) South America

A narrow piece of land jutting out into the sea is called:

(b) Isthmus



Consumers

North America

Deserts

(d) Island

Transportation of goods

(d)

(d)

None of these

Industrialists (d)

(b)

(c)

(c) Plateaus

(c) Cape

(c) Africa

CHAPTER 3

Geographical land location of pakistan

	IMPORTANT SHORT QUESTIONS & ANSWERS							
Q.1	Name five important cities of the province Sindh.							
Ans:	Important Cities of the Province Sindh							
	The names of five important cities of the province Sindh are following. (i) Larkana (ii) Sukkur (iii) Hyderabad							
	(i) Larkana (ii) Sukkur (iii) Hyderabad (iv) Mirpur Khas (v) Karachi							
Q.2	Name five important cities of the province Punjab.							
Ans:	Important Cities of the Province Punjab							
	The names of five important cities of the province Punjab are following.							
	(i) Lahore (ii) Faisalabad (iii) Rawalpindi							
	(iv) Multan (v) Dera Ghazi Khan							
Q.3	Name five important cities of the province Khyber Pakhtunkhwa.							
Ans:	Important Cities of the Province Khyber Pakhtun Khwa							
100	The names of five important cities of the province Khyber Pakhtun Khwa are following.							
	(i) Haripur (ii) Mardan (iii) Peshawar (iv) Kohat (v) Dera Ismail Khan							
Q.4	Name five important cities of the Province Baluchistan.							
_								
Ans:	Important Cities of the Province Baluchistan The names of the five important cities of the province Baluchistan are following.							
	(i) Quetta (ii) Zhob (iii) Nasirabad							
	(iv) Kalat (v) Jafarabad							
Q.5	Write down the names of five friend Muslim countries of Pakistan.							
Ans:	Friend Muslim Countries of Pakistan							
	The names of five friend Muslim countries of Pakistan are following.							
	(i) Saudi Arabia (ii) Bangladesh (iii) Turkey							
	(iv) Egypt (v) Iran							
Q.6	Write down the names of five neighbouring countries of Pakistan and also							
	write the lengths of their common border with Pakistan.							
Ans:	The Neighbouring Countries of Pakistan							
	The names of neighbouring countries and the lengths of their common borders with							

Pakistan are following.

Iran

(i)

: Length of common border = 800km : Length of common border = 1610km

(ii) India : Length of common border = 1610km (iii) China : Length of common border = 585km

(iv) Afghanistan : Length of common border = 2252km (v) Tajukistan : Length of common border = 592km

	The Control of Pakistan	28	Iqra Commercial Geography for Class
Q.7	Write the names of Federal and	Provin	cial capitals of Pakistan
Ans:	regeral and Provincial Capi	tald of	Daklatan
(1)	The names of Federal and Provincial of Federal Capital Islamabad	apitals of	Pakistan are following.
(2)	Provincial Capitals		
	(i) The Province Sindh (ii) The province Punjab (iii) The province Khyber Pakhtun (iv) The province Baluchistan		; Karachi ; Lahore ; Peshawar ; Quétta
Q.S	Name any five districts of Balu	chistan.	
Ans:	The names of five districts of Baluchis (i) District Nascerabad	tan are fo	ollowing.
	(iii) District Qila Abdullah (v) District Lasbela	(ii) (iv)	District Wazirstan District Khuzdar
Q.9	Name any five districts of Sind	h	
Ans:	Districts of Sindh The names of five districts of Sindh at (i) District Jacobabad (ii) (iii) District Badin (iv) (v) District Umer Kot	Distri	ig. ct Nawabshah ct Sanghar
Q.10	Name any five districts of Punj	ıb.	POPULATION IN THE PROPERTY OF
Ans:	Districts of Punjab	100	
	The names of five districts of Punjab a (i) District Okara (ii) (iv) District Mianwali (v)	Distri	ing. ct Gujrat (iii) — District Jhang ct Lodhran
Q.11	Name any five districts of Khyl	er Pakl	itunkhwa,
Ans:	Districts of Khyber Pakhtu	nkhwa	
	The names of five districts of Khyber (i) District Malakand (ii) (iii) District Charsadda (iv) (v) District Lakki Marwat	Pakhtun I Distri	Chwa are following. ct Mansehra ct Kohat
Q.12	Describe the land location of Po	ıkistan	in South-Asian region.
A	The Land Leasting of Dakiel		a made by the common with an electric transfer.

Islamic Republic of Pakistan is located between latitude 23.35° to 37.05° North and extends from longitude 77.50° East, covering an area of 7,96,096 square kilometres Pakistan has a prominent status according to its land location, while in the South Asia region its land location has great geographical importance. It is the source of linkage between the East and West part.

Q.13 Describe the Administrative distribution of Pakistan.

Ans: Administrative Distribution of Pakistan

Pakistan has been divided into four provinces, 106 districts, 27 commissonaries with Federal Capital Islamabad while the districts have been further divided into Tehsils and Union Councils. The four provinces of Pakistan and their capitals are following.

; Capital : Karachi Sindh (1) ; Capital : Lahore (2) Punjab

jk

is e

2 3

he S

١.

10

gio

P3

Khyber Pakhtun Khwa ; Capital : Peshawar (3)

Balochistan (4) ; Capital : Quetta

Pakistan consists of four provinces, a Federal Capital area and Federally Administred Tribal Area (FATA). Area wise the province of Balochistan is the biggest with an area 347,190 square kilometres, Punjab province has an area of 205,345 square kilometres, Sindh province is spread over 140,914 square kilometres and Khyber Pakhtun Khwa spreads over 74521 kilometres. FATA has an area 27,220 square kilometres and Federal capital Islamabad has an area of 906 square kilometres.

Q.14 Write five sentences on the importance of Geographical Land Location of Pakistan.

Ans: The Importance of Land Location of Pakistan

Five sentences on the importance of geographical location of Pakistan are following.

- (i) Pakistan has central position among oil producing countries of Middle East are near
- (ii) Pakistan is situated at an important sea route. Karachi is an important international . seaport. It is a source of trade connection among many Asian and European countries.

In Pakistan, Karachi is an international airport also. The aeroplanes going to Europe and (iii) Africa are passed from Karachi.

Indus Valley and Gandhara are the ancient civilizations and possess importance from point (iv) of view of tourism. The tourist love to visit the valley of Kaghan, Sawat and Northern areas

On business point of view, Pakistan has great importance, the climate of Pakistan is (v) moderate. Sea water does not freeze in any season, therefore the trade activities remain continue throughout the year.

IMPORTANT DETAILED TYPE QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Describe in detail the geographical location of Pakistan. What is the Q.1importance of location of Pakistan in the world.

Ans: Pakistan

Islamic Republic of Pakistan was came into being on August 14, 1947. The British rulers decided to make partition of the sub-continent into the Muslim and the Hindu majori areas due to the efforts of the Quaid-e-Azam. The Hindu majority provinces were included in India. The three provinces of the Muslim majority were included in Pakistan which are Sindh, Balochistan and North West Frontier province while the province Bengal, the province Punjab, the East Bengal and the district of Assam and Gujrat were also included in Pakistan.

At the time of the establishment of Pakistan, Pakistan was divided into two geographical units.

East Pakistan (1)

East Pakistan was consisted of East Bengal and the district Gujrat.

West Pakistan (2)

The province Sindh, West Punjab, the province Balochistan, Sawat, Chitral, Dir, the states of Chitral and the trial areas were included in the West Pakistan.

The two parts of Pakistan were separated and the region of the India between the two parts and the distance was about 1500 miles. In 1971, the people of East Pakistan started the movement, thus East Pakistan was separated. The East Pakistan was appeared as a separate country with the name of Bangladesh. Pakistan also recognized Bangladesh in February 1974.

Geographical Land Location of Pakistan

Pakistan is located between lattitude 23.30° to 36.45° North and extends from longitude

61° to 75.5° East. In the North and North East of Pakistan, the province of China Sunkiang and Tibet are located and the border line connects them to Gilget. A small strip of Afghan territory known as "Wahkhan" separates Pakistan from Tajkistan. The boundary of Pakistan in the East is connected to the East Punjab in India and Rajhistan. The total area of Pakistan is 7,96,095 sqaure kilometres. Iran, China and Afghanistan are the neighbours of Pakistan. Pakistan has friendly relations with Iran and Afghanistan but relations of Pakistan with India are strained because of Kashmir dispute. Pakistan also occupies a strategic location. The main outlet of land-locked Afghanistan are passed through Pakistan and the major part of trade of Afghanistan passes through Pakistan. The oil and gas of the Central Asian States can easily be marketed through Pakistan. The oil rich Gulf States are also located near Pakistan.

The Importance of Land Location of Pakistan

Pakistan enjoys a unique and important geographical position and political position in the world because Pakistan lies in a region which as a prominent, defensive, economic and political importance. The importance of the geographical land location of Pakistan in South Asian Region can be described as following.

Important Sea Route (i)

Pakistan is located at important sea route. Karachi is an important sea port of Pakistan. Karachi Port is a source of commercial connections with many Asian and European countries due to its location on international sea route.

Central Position in Islamic World (ii)

Pakistan has a central position in the Islamic world. All the oil producing countries of the Middle East are located near Pakistan and Pakistan has good relations with all countries especially with Iran and Turkey.

Links through Roads and Railways (iii)

Pakisan has connections through railways and roads to Iran, Turkey, Afghanistan, India, China and the countries of Central Asia which give support in trade activities. The Karakoram highway links Pakistan to China and Pakistan also building a motorway from Gawadar Seaport to Peshawar which will help in the trade of the countries of Central Asia from the land routes of Pakistan.

International Air Route (iv)

Pakistan is located at an important air route. In this respect Karachi Airport has great importance, the aeroplanes of Europe and Africa pass through Pakistan when they are going to the Asian countries.

Commercial Importance (v)

Pakistan has geographical importance according to commercial point of view. The climate of Pakistan is moderate and the water in the oceans does not freeze in any season, hence the trade activities in Pakistan remain continue throughout a year.

Agricultural Importance

Agricultural activities in Pakistan remain continue throughout a year and all kinds of fruits and vegetables are cultivated here, therefore Pakistan also exports fruits and vegetables in large quantity to other countries.

Agriculture and Industry (vii)

There are certain effects of different kinds of climate on the economic conditions of Pakistan. Agriculture and industries are common in Pakistan because of availability of raw materials. Agricultural industries are very common in Pakistan.

(viii) Fishing Trade

The broad coast of Pakistan is the most favourable for fishing. Many species of fish are available. Million of tons of fish is caught for the requirement. Pakistan also earns a lot of foreign exchange with the export of fish to other countries.

(ix) **Cultivation of Crops**

The major portion of Pakistan constitutes the region of torrid zone and temperate zone

due to which the season remains moderate and favourable throughout a year, therefore many crops are cultivated in Pakistan.

(x) Availability of Human Resources

Pakistan has also prominent status with respect to human resources. Pakistani labour and workers not only work in Pakistan but they also give help as human resources in Islamic, European and other distant countries.

Q.2 Describe in detail the Administrative Division of Pakistan.

Ans: The Administrative Division of Pakistan

In Pakistan, there is a federal form of government and according to the constitution, the powers are divided between the provinces and the centre. Federal government and the provincial

governments perform their functions according to the provisions of the constitution.

According to administrative division, Pakistan is divided into four provinces Sindh, Punjab, Khyber Pakhtunkhwa and Baloches. Karachi, Lahore, Peshawar and Quetta are the capitals of these four provinces. The Northern Areas, the Federally Administered Tribal Areas (FATA) and the Federal capital Islamabad are also included in the administrative division of Pakistan. Bajour Agency, Mehmand Agency, Khyber Agency, Orakzai Agency, South Waziristan, North Waziristan and some small areas of the districts of Khyber Pakhtunkhwa are included in Federally Administreted Tribal Areas (FATA).

(1) The Administrative Formation of Sindh

The province Sindh lies 23.40° and 28.29° North latitude and 66.40° to 71.5° East longitudes. The East-West breadth of the province is about 250km and North-South length is about 540km. On the West and the North, it has common boundry with Balochisan. The province Pnjab is located on the North-East of Sindh. On the East of Sindh, the Indian states Rajhistan and Gujrat are located. Arabian Sea is located in South of the province Sindh. The total area of the province Sindh is 140,914 square kilometres. It is the most urbanized province, it comprises 48.75% urban population. There are 163 urban localities in the province Sindh. It comprises one metropolitan corporation Karachi. Eight municipal corporations, twenty-nine municipal committes, one hundred and seventeen town committees and Eight cantonments. The divisions and districts of the province are following:

cince are following:
(i) Larakan Division: Jacobabad, Shikarpur and Larkana districts

(ii) Sukkur Division: Sukkur, Noshero Feroz, Nawab Shah and Ghotki districts

(iii) Hyderabad Division: Dadu, Badin, Thatta and Hyderabad districts

(iv) Mirpurkhas Division: Sanghar, Mirpur Khas, Umer Kot and Tharparkar districts (v) Karachi Division: Malir, Karachi East, Karachi West, Karachi South and

Karachi Central

(2) Administrative Formation of Punjab

The province Punjab is located 27.40° to 34.01° North latitude and 69.20° to 75.20° East longitude. On the North the boundary of Punjab is connected to Khyber Pakhtunkhwa and Federal capital Islamabad. On the North-East is connected to Azad Kashmir and Occupied Kashmir. The boundaries of the Punjab are connected to India on the East and the South. On the South-West, its boundary is connected to the province Sindh and on the West connected to the province Balochistan. Population-wise it is the largest province of Pakistan. The total area of the Punjab is 205,345 square kilometres. It contains 55.6% of the total population of Pakistan.

The province Punjab has been divided into eight administrative divisions. The province Punjab comprises 34 districts, 105 sub-divisions and 25,892 villages. In addition it has further been divided seven Muncipal Corporations, Seventy-six Municipal Committees, One hundred and forty three town committees, eighteen cantonments and one Metropolitan Corporation. The Divisions

and Districts of the Punjab are following.

(i) Lahore Division : Shaikupura, Lahore, Kasur and Okara districts

(ii) Gujranwala Divison : Gujranwala, Sialkot, Gujrat, Narowal, Mandi Bahauddin and Hafizabad districts

(iii) Faisalabad Division : Faisalabad, Toba Tek Singh and Jhang districts

(iv) Sargodha Division : Sargodha, Mianwali, Khusab and Bhakkar districts (v) Rawalpindi Division : Rawalpindi, Attock, Chakwal and Jhelum districts (vi) Multan Division : Multan, Pakpattan, Khanewal, Vehari, Sahiwal and Lodhran districts (vii) Dera Ghazi Khan Division: Dera Ghazi Khan, Rajan pur, Leiah and Muzaffargarh districts (viii) Bahawalpur Division : Bhawalpur, Bahawalnagar and Rahim Yar Khan

(3) Administrative Formation of Khyber Pakhtun Khwa

The province Khyber Pakhtun Khwa is located 31.15° to 36.55° North lattitude and 70.05° to 74.05° East longitude. The extreme length between these parallels is about 600km and the extreme breadth is about 400km. The boundaries of Khyber Pakhtun Khwa are connected to Azad Kashmir, Punjab and Blochistan On the East. The province Khyber Pakhtun Khwa is located in the South along Dera Ghazi Khan while in the West, it is connected to Federally Administred Tribal Areas (FATA). The capital of Khyber Pakhtun Khwa is Peshawar which is a thickly populated city.

The total area of Khyber Pakhtun Khwa is 74,521 square kilometres. Khyber Pakhtun Khwa has been divided into seven divisions and twenty four districts. There are 7,336 villages and 45 cities or towns in Khyber Pakhtun Khwa. The Divisions and Districts of Khyber Pakhtun Khwa are following.

(i)	Malakand Division	: Chitral, Upper Dir, Lower Dir, Sawat, Shangla and
.,		Malakand Districts
(ii)	Hazara Division	: Kohistan, Batgram, Manshera, Abbotabad and Haripur
····	" FUN.	Districts
(iii)	Peshawar Division	: Charsadda, Peshawar and Nowshera Districts
(iv)	Mardan Division	: Mardan and Swabi Districts
(v)	Kohat Division	: Kohat, Hangu and Karak Districts
(vi)	Bannu Division	: Bannu and Lakki Marwat Districts
(vii)	Dera Ismail Khan Divisio	n : Dera Ismail Khan and Tank Districts

(4) Administrative Formation of Balochistan

Balochistan is located at 24.53° to 32.65° North latitudes are 60.52° to 72.18° East longitudes. On the North, the boundaries of Balochistan are connected to Afghanistan and Federally Administered Tribal Area (FATA). Its boundaries are also connected to FATA and the Punjab on the North-East. On the East, the boundary of Balochistan is connected to province Sindh. The Western boundary of Balochistan is connected to province Sindh. The Western boundary of Balochistan is completely connected to Iran. 750km long border of Balochistan on the South is connected with the Arabian Sea. Due to the presence of Southern hills in East-West direction, the coastal area of Balochistan is not effectively connected with the interior Balochistan.

Area-wise Balochistan is the largest province of Pakistan. The capital of Balochistan is Quetta. The total area of Balochistan 3,47,190 square kilometres. Although Balochistan is the longest province and covers 44% land area of Pakistan but it contains only 5% of the total population of Pakistan. The province Balochistan has been divided into six divisions and twenty two districts. The divisions and the districts of Balochistan are following.

stricts.	The divisions and the dis	tricts of Balochistan are following.
(i) (ii) (iii)	Quetta Division Zhob Division Sibi Division	: Quetta, Pishin, Qila Abdullah and Chagai Districts : Loralai, Musa Khel, Qila Saifullah and Zhob Districts
(iv) (v)	Nasirabad Division Kalat Division	: Sibi, Ziarat, Kohlu and Dera Bagti Districts : Jhal Magsi and Bolan Districts : Kalat, Mastaung, Khuzdar, Awaran, Kharan and Lasbela Districts

: Turbat, Gawadar and Punjgur Districts

Federal Capital Islamabad

Makran Division

(vi)

The Federal capital of Pakistan Islamabad is located 33.28° to 33.48° North latitude and 72.48° to 73.22° East longitude. It is located on the Northern edge of Potwar Plateau at the height of 500-600 metres. It is bounded by Haripur district of Khyber Pakhtun Khwa on the North and by

(d) Balochistan

Rawalpindi district of Punjab and all other sides.

The total area of Islamabad is 906 square kilometres. There is no muncipial corporation, Muncipal Committee or Town Committee in Islalambad. Capital Development Authority (CDA) has been established for the development of Islamabad. Deputy Commissioner works as the administrative head of the capital.

Federally Administered Tribal Area (FATA)

Federally Administered Tribal Area (FATA) are located in a narrow belt along with the border between Pakistan and Afghanistan which is known as Durand Line.

Federally Administered Tribal Area (FATA) are located 32.58° to 35° North latitudes and 69.15° to 71.50° East latitude. On the North the boundary of FATA is connected to Malakand,

Charsadda, Peshawar, Nowshera, Kohat, Hangu, Karak, Bannu, Lakki Marwat and Dera Ismail Khan. On the South its boundary is connected to Dera Ghazi Khan, Zhob and Musa Khel. The

boundary of FATA is connected to Afghanistan on the West.

The total area of FATA is 27,220 square kilometres. It contains 2.4% of the total population of Pakistan. FATA has been divided into seven political agencies and six Frontier Regions. In FATA, each Tribal Agency is administered by a Political Agent while each Frontier Region is administered by the District Commissioned Officer (DCO). Bajur Agency, Mohmand Agency, Khyber Agency, Khurram Agency, North Waziristan, South Waziristan, Tribal Areas, Adjacent Peshawar, Kohat, Bannu and Lukki Marwat Districts are included in the political administration of FATA.

Federally Administered Northern Areas (FANA)

The Northern Areas of Pakistan are located in the extreme North of Pakistan. It includes the territories of Gilgit and Baltistan. These areas are politically administered by Gilgit and Baltistan Assembly which is directly under the administration of Islamabad. Ghizer, Gilgit, Diamir and Skardu are included in the Northern Areas.

Azad Jammu and Kashmir

(9)

(a)

Sindh

Azad Jammu and Kashmir is located 33° to 36° North altitude and 73° to 75° East longitude. It is a self-governed state. The total area of Azad and Jammu Kashmir is 13,217 square kilometres. The capital of Azad Jammu and Kashmir is Muzaffarabad. It has been divided into seven districts Muzaffarabad, Rawlakot, Pallandri, Kotli, Mirpur, Bimber and Bagh.

IMPORTANT MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS - MCGs

Choo	se the corre	ect answe	er fo	or each of the foll	lowi	ng from the	giver	ı options:
(1)	The neares	t sea port f	from	Europe to South As	ia is:			
e 6-		mbo				Dacca	(d)	Karachi
(2)	The city sit	uated on t	he P	otwar Plateau is:				
	(a) Pesh				(c)	Islamabad	(d)	Quetta
(3)	The total a							The second second second
	(a) 87,5	959sq.km	(b)	796,096sq.km	(c)	794,096sq.km	(d)	795,095km
(4)	The capital							
				Faisalabad	(c)	Karachi	(d)	Lahore
(5)				province is:				
\		awar			(c)	Pashin	(d)	Quetta
(6)				kistan with respect				回影"
	, ,			The Punjab (c)	Khy	ber Pakhtunkh	wa	(d) Balochistan
7)	The capital							
	(a) Hyd	erabad	(b)	Karachi	(c)	Sukkur	(d)	Larkana
8)		of the pro		e Khyber Pakhtun K	hwa	is:	. ,	3 11 2
	(a) Pesh	lawar	(b)	Mardan	(c)	Bannu	(d)	Lakki Marwat

(b) Khyber Pakhtun khwa(c) Punjab

The largest province of Pakistan with respect to population is:

	· ·				0
(10)	This province of Pakistan contains very less	popu	lation:		
	(a) Khyber Pakthun Khwa .		Balochistan		
	(c) The Punjab	(d)			
(11)	This province of Pakistan is highly populate	d. (u)	Oman		
	(a) The Punjab (b) Sindh		Balochistan	(4)	Khyber Pakhtunkhwa
(12)	The Federal capital of Pakistan is:	(c)	Datochistan	(4)	Kilybel I akiltankiiwa
` .	(a) <u>Islamabad</u> (b) Karachi	(a)	Lahore	(4)	Quetta
(13)	The old name of the province Khyber Pakhti	(C)	Lanore	(u)	Quetta
(,	(a) Pakhtunistan				
			Pashtunistan		
(14)		(a)	Khyber Provi	nce	
(14)	In the South-West, the neighbouring countr (a) China (b) Afghanistan				
(15)	(-)	(c)	<u>Iran</u>	(d)	India
(12)	China is situated in this direction of Pakista		U		
(16)	(a) East (b) West	(c)	<u>North</u>	(d)	South
(16)	The total area of the Province Sindh is:				
(17)	(a) <u>140914sq.km</u> (b) 347190sq.km	(c)	205345sq.km	(d)	906sq.km
(17)	The length of common boundary by which P	akista	n is connected	to Ira	an is:
(10)	(a) 500km (b) 600km	(c)	<u>800km</u>	(d)	1610km
(18)	The total area of the Punjab Province is:				
(10)	(a) 34710sq.km (b) <u>205345sq.km</u>	(c)	27220sq.km	(d)	906sq.km
(19)	India geographically lies in this position with	ı resp	ect to Pakistan:		
	(a) <u>East</u> (b) West	(c)	North		South
(20)	The total area of Federally Administered Tril	bal Ar	eas (FATA) is:		
	(a) $27220sq.km$ (b) 906sq.km	(c)_	140914km	(d)	347190sq.km
(21)	The length of common boundary line along w	vith th	ne Province of S	indh	and the Punjab is:
	(a) 800km (b) 900km	(c)	585km	(d)	1610km
(22)	The total area of the province Khyber Pakhtu	n Khy	va (KPK) is:		
	(a) 27720 sq.km (b) <u>74521 sq.km</u>	(c)	140914sq.km	(d)	796096sq.km
(23)	The total area of Federal Capital Islamabad is	3	906sq.km		
	(a) 704sq.km (b) 819sq.km	(c)	906sq.km	(d)	1409sg.km
(24)	Geographically Tajikistan is located in this di	rectio	n of Pakistan:		
	(a) East (b) West	(c)	North	(<u>a</u>)	South
(25)	A narrow strip of this country separates Paki	stan f	rom Taikistan:	\III'	
	(a) Afghanistan (b) Iran				China
(26)	A narrow strip which separates Pakistan from	Taik	istan named as	:	Catala
	(a) Habku Khan (b) Wah Khan	(c)	Gulbaz Khan	(d)	Rahzad Khan
(27)	Geographically, the Arabian Sea is located in	this d	irection of Pak	ctan	, Duntad Kilan
	(a) East (b) West	(c)	North		South
(28)	In the North-West, the neighbouring country	of Pa	kistan is:	(4)	South
	(a) China (b) India		<u>Afghanistan</u>	(4)	Tran
(29)	The common boundary line between Pakistar	and	Afghanistan is	(u)	ııan
	(a) Afghan Line (b) Karakoram Line	(c)	Northern Line	(4)	u;
(30)	The length of Pak-Afghanistan common boun	dary	(Durand Line)	(a)	Durana Line
11	(a) 1452km (b) 1913km	(c)	2025km		22521
(31)	Gilgit and Baltistan are included in:	(0)	20251411	(u)	2252km
	(a) The Province Balochistan	(b)	The Province k	hvh	er Pakhtun Khwa
(0.0)	(c) Northern Areas of Pakista::	(d)	FATA	ary o	cr rakitun knwa
(32)	Chagai is the district of:	, ,			
(22)	(a) <u>Balochistan</u> (b) Sindh	(c)	Khyber Pakhtu	n Kh	iwa (d) Punjab
(33)	The number of the divisions of the Province S	Sindh	is:		\-/ A unjau
(34)	(a) Three (b) Four	(c)	Five .	(d)	Eight
(34)	The number of the divisions of the Province P (a) Six (b) Seven		is:		
(35)		(c)	<u>Eight</u>	(d)	Ten '
()	The capital of Azad Jammu and Kashmir is: (a) Skurdu (b) Muzzafarahad				
	(a) Skurdu (b) <u>Muzzafarabad</u>	(c)	Kotli	(d)	Bagh

CHAPTER

Hysical Feature

	Pakistan	4
	IMPORTANT SHORT QUESTIONS & ANSWERS	•••
Q.1	Name any five Passes of Pakistan.	
Ans:	The Passes of Pakistan	
	The names of five passes of Pakistan are following. (i) Khyber Pass (ii) Tochi Pass (iii) Khurram Pass (iv) Gomal Pass (v) Bolan Pass	
Q.2	Write down the names of five highest mountain peaks of Pakistan. Writh the names of mountains of the peaks.	te
Ans:	The Highgest Peaks of Pakistan The names of five highest peaks of Pakistan along with their mountainous ranges a	ra
Q.3	(i) The Karakoram Range ; Godwin Austin (K-2) (ii) The Great Himalayas ; Nanga Parbat (iii) The Hindukush Range ; Tirch Mir (iv) The Sulaiman Range ; Takht-e-Sulaiman (v) The Koh-e-Safed Range ; Sikeram Name five Natural Regions of Pakistan.	
Q.4	Write down the names of five deserts of Pakistan.	
Ans	The Deserts of Pakistan The names of the five deserts of Pakistan are following. (i) Thar Desert (ii) Thal Desert (iii) Nara Desert (iv) Cholistan Desert(iv) Kharan Desert	
Q.5	Name five important cities of the province Sindh.	
Ans	The names of five important cities of the province Sindh are following. (i) Karachi (ii) Hyderabad (iii) Sukkur (iv) Larkana (v) Nawab Shah	製物を開発しています。
00	White dawn the names of five labor of Dahiston	



Write down the names of five lakes of Pakistan.

Ans: The Lakes of Pakistan

The names of the five lakes of Pakistan are following.

- Manchar Lake (i)
- Kenjhar Lake (iii) (ii)
 - Halejee Lake

- Chp 4: Physical Features of Pokistan 36 Igra Commercial Geraphy for Class X Lake Hamon Mashkhel (v) (iv) Lake Saif-ul-Maluk Q.7Write down the names of five parts of the Northern and North-Eastern Mountainous Range of Pakistan. Northern and North-Eastern Mountainous Range Five parts of the No. hern and North-Eastern Mountains Range of Pakistan are following. The Karakoram Mountainous Range (ii) Great Himalayan Mountainous Range Siwalik Hills or The Sub Himalayas (iii) Pir Panjal or The Lesser Himalayas (iv) The Ladakh Mountains or Interior Himalayas (v) Write down the names of the five parts of the North-Western and Western Q.SMountainous Range of Pakistan. The North-Western and Western Mountainous Range The names of the five parts of the North-Western and Western Mountainous Range of Pakistan are following. (i) The Hindukush Mountains (ii) The Koh-e-Safed Range (iii) The Waziristan Hills The Sulaiman Range The Kirthar Range Write down the names of any five valleys and tourist points Q.9 located in the Himalyan Mountain Range. The Valleys and Tourist Points The names of the five valleys and tourist points which are located in the Himalayan Mountain Range are following. Ayubia Abbottabad Nathia Gali The Valley of Kaghan Q.10 In how many Natural Regions can Pakistan be divided according to its geographical location. Ans: The Natural Regions of Pakistan Pakistan can be divided into following Natural Regions with respect to its geographical location. Mountainous Ranges (1)Northern and North-Eastern Mountains North-Western and Western Mountains (ii) (2)Plateaus The Potwar Plateau (i)
 - The Balochistan Plateau (ii)
 - (3) The Plain Areas
 - (i) The Upper Indus Plain
- The Lower Indus Plain
- The Indus Delta (iii)
- The Deserted Areas (4)
 - (ii)

(ii)

- Cholistan Desert
- Thatta and Nara Desert (iv) (iii)
- The Chagai and Kharan Desert

(5) Coastal Areas

(i)

The Coast of Makran

Thal Desert

(ii) The Coast of Sindh



Write down five sentences on the importance of North and North-Eastern 0.11

Ans: The Importance of Northern and North-Eastern Mountains

The importance of Northern and North Eastern Mountains in Pakistan are following.

These mountains are very beautiful for Pakistan. They provide na aral defence to Pakistan (i) from the North due to their height and uneven surface.

They protect Pakistan from the cold and freezing winds blowing from the North Pole. (ii)

These mountains cause high rate of rainfall in monsoon in the Punjab and Northern areas (iii) of Khyber Pakhtun Khwa.

(iv) During winters, these mountains are covered with snow which melts during the summer and raises the underground water table. This water can be used for irrigation.

- (v) These mountains cover 80% forests in Pakistan. Although only 4.5% of the geographical area of Pakistan is under forests but these forests are quite thick and are the source of great wealth to the country.
- Write down the Tourist Spots or major valleys in Northern Mountains of Q.12Pakistan along with their Mountainous ranges.

Ans: Tourists Spots and Valleys in Northern Mountains

Tourist Points and major valleys located in the Northern Mountains following.

(iii)

The Hindukush Range (1) Sawat

(2)

The Karakoram Range

Gilgit Hunza

The Great Himalyan Range (3)

Kashmir Valley (ii) (i) Kaghan Valley

Nathia Galli (v) Ghora Galli

Write down the names of five passes in the Q.13Pakistan.

Chitral

Ans: Passes in Western Mountains

The names of the five passes located in Western Mountains of Pakistar

(i) Khyber Pass (ii)

: It is located at Peshawar Cantt. Kurram Pass : It is located at Kohat Cantt.

(iii) : It is located at Dera Ismail Khan Cantt, Gomal Pass

(iv) Tochi Pass

: It is located at the district Bannu.

Bolan Pass : It is located at Quetta.

Q.14 Write down the names of five passes in the North-Eastern Mountains of Pakistan.

Ans: Passes in North-Eastern Mountains

The names of the five passes located in North-Eastern Mountains of Pakistan are following.

(i) Karakoram Pass

Shandur Pass (ii)

(iii) Lawari Pass

Baltistan

(iv) Kilk Pass

Babusar Pass (v)

Q.15 Write down the names of Left bank or Eastern tributaries of the River Indus in Pakistan.

Ans: Left Bank or Eastern Tributries of the River Indus

The names of left bank or Eastern Tributaries of the river Indus are following.

River Jhelum (ii) River Chenab River Ravi (iv) River Sutlej (iii)



Write down the names of Right Bank or Western Tributaries of the river

Ans: Right Bank or Western Tributaries of the River Indus

The names of right bank or western tributaries of river Indus are following.

- River Kabul
- (ii) River Sawat
- (iii) River Kurram

- (iv) River Tochi
- River Gomal (v)
- (vi) River Bolan
- Write down the names of the rivers located in Potwar Plateau and Balochistan Plateau.

Ans: The Rivers in Potwar Plateau

The names of the rivers in Potwar Plateau are following:

River Haro

(ii) River Swan

The Rivers of Balochistan Plateau

The rivers of the Balochistan Plateau are following.

- River Zhob
- (ii) River Dasht
- (iii) River Hangol
- (iv) River Porali (v) River Hub
- Q.18 What is meant by Doab? Write down any four Doabs of Pakistan.

Ans: Doab

When two canals are constructed on two river and their water is used for irrigation of crops then this type of the use of water from the two canals is called Doab.

Doabs of Pakistan

The names of the Doabs of Pakistan are following.

(i) Sindh Sagar Doab (River Indus and Jhelum)

- Chaj Doab (River Chenab and Jhelum) (ii)
- Rachna Doab (River Ravi and Chenab) (iii)
- Bari Doab (River Sutlej and Ravi) (iv)

10

Write down the names of the Barrages constructed on the River Indi

Ans: The Barrages on River Indus

The names of the Barrages constructed on the river Indus are following.

- Jinnah Barrage (ii) Guddu Burrage (v) (iv)
- Chashma Barrage
- (iii) Tounsa Barrage
- Sukkur Barrage (vi) Kotri Barrage Write down five sentences on the Northern and North Eastern Mountains Q.20 of Pakistan.

Ans: The Northern and North-Eastern Mountains of Pakistan

Five sentences on Northern and North Eastern Mountains of Pakistan are following.

The Northern and North-Eastern mountains in Pakistan are divided into the Himalayas (i) and the Karakoram Ranges of mountains.

In the North-Eastern part of Pakistan, the Himalaya is the highest mountainous range of (ii) the world. This range is divided into Siwalik Hills. Pir Panjal Mountains and the Great Himalyan mountain range.

The Karakoram range of mountains is situated in the North West and include the (iii) territories of North Kashmir and Gilgit. (iv)

The parallel ranges of Himalayas stretch like an arch up to the Eastern part of India for about 2430 kilometres. A number of beautiful valleys are located here. (v)

The highest peak of Pakistan and the second highest peak of the world Goldin Austin (K-2) is located in the Karakoram Range. A number of glaciers also cover these ranges including the Siachin Glacier.

Q.21 Describe the Himalayan Mountainous Range of Pakistan in the five sentences.

Ans: The Himalayan Mountainous Range.

Five sentences on the Himalayan Mountainous Range of Pakistan are following.

(i) The Himalayan Mountainous Range is located in the North-Eastern part of Pakistan

(ii) The Himalayan Mountainous Range is divided into the Sub-Himalayas or the Siwalik Hills; The Lesser Himalayas or The Pir Panjal Mountainous Range, Greater Central Mountainous Range and The Interior Himalayas or The Ladakh Mountainous Range.

(iii) The Sub-Himalayas or The Siwalik Hills are located in the South of Himalaya from Sialkot

district to the Northern part of the Rawalpindi district.

(iv) The most part of Pir Panjal Mountains is covered with snow and the beautiful valleys and tourist spots like Murree, Ayubia, Nathia Galli, Abbotabad and Valley of Kaghan located here.

(v) The height of the mountains in the Great Himalayan Range is about 6500 metres and Nanga Parbat is the highest peak which is 8126 metres high. The beautiful valley of Kashmir also lies in these ranges.

Q.22 Describe North-Western and Western Mountains of Pakistan in five sentences.

Ans: North-Western and Western Mountains of Pakistan

Five sentences on North-Western and Western Mountains of Pakistan are following.

(i) North-Western and Western Mountains of Pakistan are divided into the Hindukush Mountains, The Koh-e-Safed Range, The Waziristan Hills, The Sulaiman Range and the Kirther Range.

(ii) The Hindukush Mountains cause rainfall in Pakistan and these mountains also stop the severe cold winds blowing from the Central Asia. Tirch Mir is the highgest Peak with a

height of 7690 metres.

(iii) The Koh-i-Safed mountainous range is located between the Khyber Pass and Kurram Pass. Sikeram is the highest peak in this range. The area between Kurram Pass and Gomal Pass is known as Waziristan Hills.

(iv) The Sulaiman Range of mountains begins in the South of river Gomal. The highest peak of

this range is Takht-e-Sulaiman with a height of 3487 metres.

(v) The Kirthat Range of mountains in the South of the Sulaiman Range and along the western edge of the lower Indus Valley. The highest point in this region is Gorakh.

Q.23 Write down five sentences on Potwar Plateau.

Ans: The Potwar Plateau

Five sentences on Potwar Plateau are following:

(i) The Potwar Plateau is located between the river Indus and the river Jhelum.

(ii) The height of this plateau ranges from 300 metres to 600 metres.

(iii) This plateau starts in the South of the river Jhelum near Tilla Jogian and spreads to the districts of Jhelum. Mianwali, Rawalpindi and some parts of Islamabad.

(iv) The biggest mine of salt "Khewra" lies in Potwar Plateau.

- (v) Minerals like gypsum, coal and salt are found in the salt range of Potwar Plateau.
- Q.24 Write down five sentences on Balochistan Plateau.

Ans: The Balochistan Plateau

Five sentences on Balochistan Plateau are following.

(i) Balochistan Plateau is located in the West of Kirthar and Sulaiman mountains.

(ii) The height of Balochistan Plateau is 650 metres.

(iii) The peaks of Ziarat and Muslim Bagh are the highest points in the plateaus.

(iv) It is the largest plateau of Pakistan of Pakistan and covers 40% area of Pakistan.



- (v) The Makran hill ranges are found in the South of this plateau. Zhob, Porali, Hingol and Dasth rivers are located in this plateau.
- Q.25 Write down five sentences on the upper Indus plain of Pakistan.

Ans: The Upper Indus Plain of Pakistan

Five sentences on the Upper Indus Plain of Pakistan are following.

- (i) The part of Indus Plain above Mithan Kot is called "The Upper Indus Plain".
- (ii) The upper Indus Plain lies between 200 metres to 300 metres above the sea level.
- (iii) The upper Indus plain has been made by the fertile soil brought by rivers. There are however, a few low dry hills near Sargodha, Chiniot and Sangla.
- (iv) The upper Indus plain starts from forthills of the Himalayas and the Potwar Plateau and terminates near Mithan Kot where the Sulaiman Ranges approach the River Indus.
- (v) The Upper Indus Plain is sub-divided into four large Doabs which are Sindh Sagar Doab, Chaj Doab, Rachna Doab and Bari Doab. One of the greatest canal system of the world is aperating in this plain which produces wheat, rice, sugarcane, cotton, corn, pulses etc. in large quantities.
- Q.26 Write down five sentences on the lower Indus Plain of Pakistan.

Ans: The Lower Indus Plain of Pakistan

Five sentences on the Lower Indus Plain of Pakistan are following.

- (i) The area South of Mithan Kot is called the Lower Indus Plain. This includes most of the area of the Sindh Province.
- (ii) The river Indus flows gently show in the flat land. It deposits along its course all the silt it has brought from the hills.
- (iii) In the Lower Indus Plain, three barrages have been built across the river Indus to divert its water into canals for irrigating land. They have brought prosperity to central Sindh but the Eastern part is still is a desert.
- (iv) The Lower Indus Plain can be divided into the distinctive zones Karachi-Sibi plain, The Sindh plain and The Indus Delta.
- Sindh plain and The Indus Delta.

 (v) As rainfall is low in this region, water is needed for agriculture. Due to canal irrigation, different kinds of crops are grown in the part of the Indus Plain.

Q.27 Write five sentences on the Deserts of Pakistan.

Ans: The Deserts of Pakistan

Five sentences on the Deserts of Pakistan are following.

- (i) An extensive area in the South-East of Pakistan is covered with roling sand dunes. The desert area of Pakistan receive very low rainfall, therefore these deserts are without natural vegetation.
- (ii) Some plain areas of Pakistan are called desert or semi-desert because their physical conditions are different from those of the plain areas. Some of them are located in the Punjab and some in Sindh province.
- (iii) Thal desert is located in the district Mianwali, Muzaffargarh and Dera Ghazi Khan. About sixty percent area of Bahalpur region and its South-Eastern portion is located in Cholistan Desert.
- (iv) The desert area of the Thar and the Nara is located is border areas of Khairpur, South-Eastern ports of districts Tharparker, Umar Kot and Sanghar in Sindh. The natural vegetation of the area is thorny bushes.
- (v) The North-West districts of Chaghi and Kharan in Balochistan are extremely dry, therefore know as the Chaghi and Kharam Desert.
- Q.28 Write a note on the Coastal Area of Pakistan.

Ans: The Coastal Area of Pakistan

- (i) The total length of the coastal area of Pakistan is about 700 kilometres.
- (ii) The coastal area of Pakistan has been divided into two parts. The Sindh Coast and the

Makran Coast.

- The coastal area between the border of Iran and Hub river is called Makran Coast. Its (iii) length is about 500 kilometres.
- The coastal area which is located between Hub Delta and Thatta is called Sindh Coast. Its (iv) length is about 200 kilometres.
- All coastal areas of Pakistan are located on the Arabian Sea. The most important harbour (v) of Pakistan is Karachi. Other ports of Pakistan are Port Qasim, Sonmiani, Ormara, Pasni, Gawadar and Jewani.
- Write down the names of important Seaports of Pakistan. 0.29

Ans: The Sea Ports of Pakistan

The names of important sea ports of Pakistan are following.

- Karachi Sea Port (i)
- Port Qasim Sea Port (ii)
- Sonmiani Sea Port (iii)
- Ormara Sea Port (iv) Pasni Sea Port
- Gawadar Sea Port (v)
- (vi)
- Jeewani Sea Port (vii)
- Keti Bandar (viii)

Q.30 Write down five sentences on Karachi Sea Port.

Ans: / Karachi Sea Port

Five sentences on Karachi Sea Port are following.

- Karachi Sea Port is located near the island region on Kemari.
- It is a Sea Port of international standard. It contains 30 berths and two wharves, the East (i) (ii) Wharf and the West Wharf.
- Karachi Sea Port was opened in 1854 and now it is operated by Karachi Po Karachi Sea Port is handling 60% of the nation's cargo per annum. (iii)
- (iv)
- The hinterland of Karachi Sea Port consists of whole Pakistan and Afghanistan. (v)
- Write down five quantities of a good Sea Port. (OR) Q.31 play in the development of a country?

Ans: The Qualities of a Good Sea Port

Five qualities of a good sea port and its role in the development of a country can be

- described as following. A good sea port must be linked with good of communication and transport railways with its hinter land. Thus it provides help in the production of a country. (i)
- It is necessary for a good sea port that it should be situated in calm and well established area. Thus it helps in the extension of external trade of a country. (ii)
- It is necessary for a good sea port to have enough depth of water so that the ships may easily reach the port. A good sea port always provides better facilities for anchoring of the (iii)
- It is important for a good sea port that it must be near to international trade routes, so that an effective link can be developed with other countries of the world. With the (iv) establishment of link with other countries, a good sea port helps in the imports and
- A good sea port should be organized with the facilities of loading and storage of commercial goods. Due to the better facilities of loading and storage of commercial goods, (v) a sea port flourishing the international trade and plays a very important role in the development of a country.
- Write down five causes of the lack of good harbours in Pakistan. Q.32

Ans: The Causes of Lack of Good Harbours in Pakistan

Five causes of the lack of good harbours in Pakistan are following.

- The facilities of Potable watter are not available at the coastal areas of Pakistan. (i)
- Most of the coastal areas in Pakistan consist of plateaus, marshy and desert areas. (ii)

- (iii) The facilities of good communication and transportation are not available at the coastal areas of Pakistan.
- (iv) The coastal areas of Pakistan are broken at various places.
- (v) The coastal areas of Pakistan are less populated and less developed.

IMPORTANT DETAILED TYPE QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q.1 Describe in detail the physical features of Pakistan.

Ans: The Physical Features of Pakistan.

Pakistan is an extensive state, the total area of Pakistan is 796,095 square kilometres, there is a distinction among the physical features of Pakistan. High mountains are located in the North, North-East and the West of Pakistan while the other area is 32,8000 square kilometres. The physical features of Pakistan can be described as following.

(1) Northern and North-East Mountains

In the North and North-Eastern part of Pakistan there is a range of Mountains, the direction of the location of these mountains is from the East to the West. These mountains are divided into the Himalayas and the Karakoram Mountaineous ranges.

(i) The Himalayas Mountain Range

In the North-Eastern part of Pakistan, the Himalayan Mountain Range is the highgest Mountainous Range of the World. It consists of four parallel ranges of mountains, the height of these mountains is 600 metres while the height of the peaks is about 8,000 metres. There are beautiful valleys which are located in these mountains where gardens are present and green crops are cultivated on fertile land. The Himalayan Mountain Range is divided into following parts.

- (a) The Siwalik Hills (b) Pir Panjal Mountains Range
- (c) The Great Himalayas or The Central Himalayas
- (d) The Ladakh Mountains or Interior Himalayas

The Siwalik Hills rise in the North where the upper Indus Plain ends. These hills spread in South of Himalayas from Sialkot district to the Northern part of Rawalpindi district. The average height of these hills is 300 to 1000 metres. Pir Panjal mountains are located near the border ranges of Karakoram and Siwalik Hills. They start from the North of Siwalik Hills, where from the Himalayas begins to rise gradually to the height of 1800 metres to 4600 metres. Most of the Northern Hilly Areas are situated here. Beautiful valleys and Tourist Spots like Murree, Ayubia, Nathia Galli, Ghora Galli, Abbotabad and the beautiful valley of Kaghan are located here. Most of the parts of these mountains are covered with snow.

The biggest Himalayan Mountain Range is situated between Pir Panjal and the Karakoram Range and this is known as The Great or Central Himalayas. The average height of these mountains is 6,096 metres. The highest peak of these mountainous range is Nanga Parbat with a height of 8126 metres. Indus the longest river of Pakistan originates in these mountains. The beautiful valley of Kashmir also lies in this range. The great Himalayas begin to climb down further in the North. These low mountains are known as the Ladakh Mountains or Interior Himalayas.

(ii) The Karakoram Mountainous Range

The Karakoram Mountainous Range is located in the North-West of the Great Himalayas and it also include the territories of North Kashmir and Gilgit. The Mountains of the Karakoram Range are also called as Black Mountains. The average height of the Karakoram Range is about 7000 metres. The highest peak of Pakistan and the second highest peak of the world Goldwin Austin (K-2) is located in the Karakoram Range. The height of this peak is 8611 metres. A number of glaciers cover this range, including Siachin Glacier. Pakistan's Silk route or Karakoram highway passes through this mountainous range and connects it with China. 33 peaks of the Karakoram range are more than 7000 metres high. Twenty Glaciers are located in these mountains with an average length of 20 kilometres. The other lofty pinnaches of the Karakoram Mountainous Range are Broad Peak, Gasher Brun - I, Distanghill and Rakaposhi. The Khinjrab Pass, The Lawari Pass.

方: 35 mm (4) mm

The Shandur Pass, The Kilk Pass, The Khyber Pass, The Karakoram Pass, The Babusar Pass and the Mustalbai Pass are located in the Karakoram Mountainous Range.

North-Western and Western Mountainous Range (2)

The North-Western and Western Mountainous Range of Pakistan is started from the North-West and the Western parts with the Pamir Plateau and extended towards the Western border of Balochistan. These Mountains make a border between Pakistan and Afghanistan. These Mountainous Range is divided in following parts.

The Hindukash Mountains

The Koh-i-Safed (ii)

The Waziristan Hills (iii)

The Sulaiman Range (iv)

The Kirthar Range (v)

The Hindukush Mountains are started from the Pamir Plateau and it extends from the River Indus to the River Kabul. Trich Mir is the highest peak of the mountains with a height of 7690 metres. Chitral, Dir and Sawat Hills are the branches of the Hindukush Mountains. These are snow-capped mountains. The important rivers of this region are Sawat, Kunhar and Panjkora which join the river Indus from the Western Side. The Koh-i-Safed lies between the River Kabul and Kurram Pass. The Koh-i-Safed has an East-West trend and rises to an average height of 3600 metres. The river Kurram flows in the South of Koh-i-Safed. The Khyber Pass is located in Koh-i-Safed joins Pakistan and Afghanistan. The highest peak of Koh-i-Safed range is Sikeram with a height of 4761 metres. Kohat is an important military base located at the end of the Kurram Pass.

The Waziristan Hills are located between the river Kurram and Gomal. The average height of these hills is 1500 to 3000 metres. There are many plain valleys are located in these mountains. The river Kurram is the most important river of this region. The Tochi Pass links Afghanistan to Bannu Valley while, Gomal Pass links Afghanistan to Dera Ismail Khan. The Sulaiman Mountainous Range begins in the South of river Gomal. Takht-e-Sulaiman is the highest peak of this range with a height of 3487 metres. The most important river of this region is Bolan river which flows through the Bolan Pass. Bolan Pass connects Quetta with Sibbi. Quetta is an important cantonment area situated at the end of Bolan Pass. A railway line passes through this area to Quetta and then goes to Zahidan Iran. The Kirther Range lies in the South of the Sulaiman Range. Hub rivers and Layari rivers are the important rivers of this region. On the South these mountains spread out in width and are known as Sindh Kohistan. Hb and Lyari streams ultimately fell into the Arabian Sea Karachi.

Plateaus

The vast area of the Punjab and Balochistan province consists of Plateaus. They have separate positions due to their location and physiographical properties. The Plateaus of Pakistan are following.

The Potwar Plateau (i)

The Plateau which lies between the river Indus and the river Jhelum is called Potwar Plateau. It starts in the South of river Jhelum near Tilla Jogian and spreads to districts Jhelum, Mianwali and Rawalpindi and some parts of Islamabad. The height of this plateau ranges from 300 to 600 metres. The main rivers of this area are Soah and Haro. The total area of the Potwar Plateau is about 18,000 square kilometres. On the North of two plateaus there are the mountains of Kala Chita and Margalla. Oils and other minerals are found at various places of this area. Islamabad, Attock, Rawalpndi and Jhelum are located on the Potwar Plateau from the river Jhelum to the river Indus.

The Salt Range (ii)

The Salt Range forms the Southern boundary of the Potwar Plateau. It also starts from the South of the river Jhelum near Tilla Jogian and spread to a few parts of Mianwali, Bannu and Dera Ismail Khan. The average height of this range is about 700 metres. But at Sikessar its height is 1500 metres. The Salt Range is famous for its salt deposits at "Khewra Salt Mines" which are mined since the time of Alexander the Great. The Salt Range starts in two almost parallel series of hills. The valley of Soan is the beautiful valley located in the middle of the Salt Range. The entire area of the Salt Range is almost barren. Minerals like gypsum, coal, silica, lime stone and salt are found in this range.

(iii) Balochistan Plateau

The Plateau which is located in the West of Kirthar and the Sulaiman Mountainous Ranges is called Balochistan Plateau. The ranges of Toba Kakar and Chaghai in the North separates it from Afghanistan. Among the ranges the peaks of Ziarat and Muslim Bagh stand as the highest points. Their height is approximately 2133 metres. In the South of this plateau lie the ranges of makran and in the centre lie the Central Brahui and North Makran hills. It is the largest plateau of Pakistan and covers about 40% area of Pakistan. In the North-West, a big area is desert, here a lake of Saltish water which is known as "Hamon-Mashkhail" is located. Rainfall in the most area of this plateau is scarce. It is mostly dry and barren. The main river of this plateau is Zhob which flows from the Sulaiman Mountainous Range. Porali, Hingol and Dasht rivers are also situated in this plateau but are of little importance. The cultivation is done with the help of Karez in Chaman, Quetta and Pishin. Balochistan Plateau is rich in minerals. The deposits of coal, copper, iron, natural gas, chromite and some deposits of silver and gold are also found in Balochistan plateaus.

The Indus Plain is important in the plains of Pakistan. The river Indus is the largest river of Pakistan. It comes out from the Kelash Mountain in Tibet from China and passes from Himalayas and Gilgit. The Indus Plain is nearly flat but Kirana Hills and Sangla Hills are also

The Indus Plain has been divided into following parts.

The Upper Indus Plain (i)

The Upper Indus Plain consists of the province Punjab. It is the part of the Indus Plain which is located above Mithan Kot. It lies between 200 metres to 300 metres above the sea level. The Upper Indus Plain has been formed by the soil brought by the river Indus and its tributaries. There are few dry hills are located near Sargodha, Chiniot and Sangla. The Upper Indus Plain spread from Attock to the South of Mithan Kot. The Upper Indus Plain has been divided into four Doabs, The Sulaiman Piedmont Plain and The Bahawalpur Plain. This plain consists of fertile Aluviam, only in the Central Punjab, Kirana Hills and Sangla Hills are located here. Due to low rainfall agriculture is not possible, therefore, one of the greatest canal system of the world is operating in this plain which produces wheat, rice, sugercane, pulses etc. in large quantities.

The Lower Indus Plain

The Lower Indus Plain consists of the province Sindh. It is located in the South of Mithan Kot. It starts from Mithan Kot and ends at Thatta. The river Indus flows slowly in this region. On the North of the lower Indus plain Thar and Nara Desert is located. The Lower Indus Plain has been divided into the Kachhi-Sibbi Plain. The Sindh Plain and the Indus Delta. As rainfall is low in this region, water is needed for agriculture. Due to canal irrigation different kinds of crops are grown in this part of Indus Plain.

(iii) The Indus Delta

As the river Indus continue its journey towards the Arabian Sea, it becomes very slow and forms its delta near Thatta where it gets divided into many distributries. The sea tides have changed the coastal areas to 40 kilometres into marshy lands. Therefore, coconut and mangroves are found in this area

(5) Deserts

Some areas of Pakistan although are the part of plains and high above the sea level but their surface is covered with hillocks of sand, the soil is unfavourable for cultivation and the vegetations are short here, these areas are known as Deserts. The deserts of Pakistan are classified into following groups.

The Thal Desert (i)

Thal desert is located in the district of Mianwali, Muzaffargarh and Dera Ghazi Khan. It is actually located between the river Jhelum and the river Indus. The Salt Range is located in the North of this desert. Three fourth of this area composed of huge mobile sand dunes. Thal desert has been levelled in many areas and intensive agriculture is being done with canal irrigation in the districts of Mianwali, Khushab, Bhakkar, Liah and Muzaffargarh.

(ii) Cholistan Desert

The Cholistan Desert is the South-Easten part of the Punjab and constitutes the Easten parts of Rahim Yar Khan, Bahawalpur and Bahawalpur districts. The desert is separated from the central irrigated zone by the dry bed of the Ghaggar river. Thus about sixty percent area of Bahawalpur region and its South-Eastern area is located in the Cholistan Desert. The central part of the Cholistan was formed in sandy-alluminum deposited by one or more of the Eastern rivers. Generally the transverse ridges of sand are occurred in the Western part while the longitudinal ridges are occurred in the Southern part of the Cholistan Desert. The area of Cholistan Desert is covered with sand dunes and the clusters of thorny bushes.

(iii) Thar and Nara Desert

The desert area of the Thar and Nara is located in border areas of Khairpur, South-Eastern parts of districts Tharparkar, Umer Kot and Sanghar in Sindh. In fact, this area is the extension of Rajhistan desert of India. It is not drained by any perennial stream, therefore wind action is dominant in the formation of topography. Rainfalls is scanty with high temperature and water table is quite low. Barren land with scattered thorny bushes is seen in the desert. Pastoral cattle's keeping is the economic activity of the scattered thin population of the desert. In this desert region of small hilly area tract "Karanjhar Hills" 20 kilometres in length and 300 metres in altitude is located in extreme South-East in Nagar Parkar.

The Chaghai and Kharan Desert

The North-Western districts of Chaghai and Kharan in Balochistan are extremely dry. The chaghai and Kharan Desert is situated between Raskoh range and Chaghai Hills. In this desert area, the gravel fans and pediments lying around hills ranges merge into the deserts. The deserts are dotted by pebbles spread over them on account of occassional floods of former times, which brought them from hill slopes. The strong deserts are locally called "Dasht".

The Chaghai and Kharan deserts lie in a region outside the monsoon area, the annual rainfall ranges from 2 to 5 inches. These barren areas are sparsely populated with the density of only four people per square kilometres.

(6) The Coastal Area

Pakistan has 700 square kilometres long coastal area. It has two parts. The coast between the border of Iran and Hub river is called Makran Coast. Its length is 500 kilometres. The other part is called Sindh Coast. Its length is 200 kilometres. It is located between Hub Delta and Thatta. All the coastal area of Pakistan are located on the Arabian Sea.

Describe the importance of Mountains for Pakistan. Q.2

Ans: The Importance of Mountains for Pakistan

The importance of the Mountains for Pakistan can be described as following.

(i) Attraction for the Tourists

The Northern and North-East Mountains of Pakistan are very attractive and there are several highest peaks are located in these mountains. 187 peaks with the height of 7000 metres or more become a source of attraction for the tourists from all over the world.

The Source of Providing Water (II)

The snow capped mountains of Pakistan are the source of providing water. Pakistan possesses harsh and dry climate therefore agriculture cannot be done here without canal irrigation. During dry season, the snow-capped mountains of Pakistan provide water to the River Indus and its tributaries. During summer season, when the ice melts on the glaciers, water flows towards the rivers.

(iii) **Border Connection**

The North and North-Eastern mountains of Pakistan are the source of border connection of Pakistan to its neighbouring countries. They provide a natural border with China and



Afghanistan.

/ Economic Importance (iv)

The mountains of Pakistan are the source of providing such goods which are helpful in the establishment of economy. The mountain valleys in Pakistan provide valuable fruits, honey, medicinal herbs for local and international market. Mountains are also a source of providing minerals, timber and raw material for several industries of Pakistan.

(v) Ecological Importance

The Mountains of Pakistan are the source of bringing rainfall in Pakistan. They uplift to Monsoon winds and bring huge rainfall in Pakistan during monsson season. The water received by this rainfall is used for irrigation. This water is also used for the production of hydel power and for the storage of dams. These mountains also provide pastures for cattle grazing. They protect Pakistan from the cold freezing winds blowing from the North Pole. They add beauty in the environment and promote tourism in Pakistan. These mountains also provide valuable fertile alluvium during rainy season which increases the fertility of the soil of the plains of Pakistan.

••••	IMPORTANT MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS (MCQs)
Ch	Oose the correct answer for each of the following from the given options:
(1)	The floods in Pakistan are appeared usually in:
151(15)	(a) Honer Plain are appeared usually in:
(2)	(a) <u>Upper Plains</u> (b) Lower Plains (c) Deserted Plains (d) Mountain Valley
	(2) T-1 10:
(3)	(a) Trich Mir (b) Nanga Parbat The height of Godwin Austin (K-2) is: (c) Godwin Austin (K-2) (d) Rakaposhi
	(a) 9000m
(4)	The average height of Koh-e-Safed range is: (c) 8611m (d) 9500m
	(a) 2800m (b) Topo
(5)	Siachin Glacier is located in this Manual (c) 3600m (d) 4000m
	(a) The Words and Michigan Range:
	(c) The Koh-i-Safed Range (b) The Hindukush Range
(6)	The highest peak of the Hindukush Mountain Range is:
	(a) Nanga Dorbos (1)
(7)	The Silk highway or The Karakoram highway connects Pakistan to: (c) Takht-e-Sulaiman (d) K-2 (a) India (b) China (c) African to:
	(a) India (b) Cl. (c) R-2
(8)	(a) India (b) China (c) Afghanistan to: The highest peak of the Himalayas Mountainous Range is: (a) Nanga Parbat (b) Tirich Min
	(a) Nanga Parbat (b) Tirich Mir (c) K-2
(9)·	THE TAXABLE PAINT OF THE PAINT
	(a) K-2 (d) Takht-e-Sulaiman (c) K-2 (d) Takht-e-Sulaiman
(10)	(a) K-2 (b) <u>Takht-e-Sulaiman</u> Mountain Range is: Siachin Glacier is situated in: (a) India (b) Claiman (c) Nanga Parbat (d) Tirich Mir
	(a) India (b) Ch:
(11)	(a) India (b) China The average height of the residual (c) Russia
	The average height of the Karakoram Mountain Range is: (a) 5000km (b) 7000km (c) Russia (d) Pakistan
12)	(a) 5000km (b) 7000km (c) 8000m (d) 9000
	(a) 3000m
13)	The total length of the coastal area of P. L. (c) 8126km (d) 46001
,	(a) Tour
14)	(a) 500km (b) 600km (c) 700l
/	Mouresia P. Murree, Abbotabad and the Vall
	Tourist Spots like Murree, Abbotabad and the Valley of Kaghan are located in this (a) Pir Panjal (b) Greet Him.
15)	(a) Pir Panjal (b) Great Himalayas (c) Ladakh
,	
16)	(a) 4000m (b) 4500m (c) Siwalik Hills
-0,	The Deautiful Valley of Vachminity
	(c) Great Himalays (d) Ladakh
	Ladakh

(17)	The Silk Highway or the Karakan Line	Iqra Commercial Geography for Class X
	The Silk Highway or the Karakoram highwa (a) The Himalayas Mountains	ay passes through:
	(a) The Himalayas Mountains (c) The Hindukush Manager	(b) The Karakoram Mountains
(18)		(d) The Kab i Sec. 124
(20)	This river flows in the South of Koh-i-Safed (a) The River Indus	(d) The Koh-i-Safed Mountains
		(h) The present of th
()	(c) The River Kurram	(b) The River Gomal
(19)	The Khyber Pass is located in this M	(d) The River Tochi
	The Khyber Pass is located in this Mountain (a) The Hindukush (b) The Kell is a few teachers.	nous Range:
(20)		(c) The Sulaiman (d) The Kirthar
	(a) Pass Joins Pakistan to:	(a) The Kirthar
(21)	(D) Algnanictan	(c) India (d) Tajikistan
(21)	the area between the Kurram Pass and the	Gamal Bass to in t
(22)	Warreton Hill	- (-) D 1 11
(22)	The Cantonment of Dera Ismail Khan and	s (c) Balochistan Plateu (d) Kirther Range
	(a) <u>Waziristan Hills</u>	(b) Siwalik Hills
	(c) Koh-i-Safed Range	(1) *** 1 1 1
(23)	The Tochi Pass leads to Ghazni which is a	(d) Hindukush Range
	(a) Iran (b) Afghanistan	/ \
(24)		(c) Tajikistan (d) Russia
	This is an important cantonment located at (a) Bannu (b) Kohat	t the end of Bolan Pass:
(25)		(c) Quetta (d) Dera Ismail Khan
(/	This is located between the river Indus and (a) The Hindukush Range	d river Jhelum:
	(a) The rindukush Range	(b) The Koh-i-Safed Range
(26)		(d) The balant and
(20)	This is located in the West of Kirthar and	Sulaiman Ranges:
	(a) The Siwank Hills	(b) The Waziristan Hills
(0.7)	(c) The Potwar Plateau	(d) The Blochiston Plateau
(27)	The average height of the Balochistan Plat	teau is:
200	(a) 600m (b) 650m	(c) 700m (d) 900m
(28)	A lake of Saltish water "Hamon Mashkhail	l" is located in
	(a) The Kirthar Range	(b) The Potwar Plateau
	(c) The Sulaiman Range	(d) The Balochistan Plateau
(29)	The biggest Salt Mine in the world is:	- (d) Ins Butotitistan Pintenti
٠,,	(a) Lakra (b) Khewra	(c) Uthal (d) Makarwal
(30)	The area below and in the South of Mitha	(c) Uthal (d) Makarwal
(,	(a) The Upper Indus Plain	
	(c) The Indus Delta	(b) The Lower Indus Plain
(31)	The area above Mithan Kot is called:	(d) The Balochistan Plateau
(31)		(1)
	(a) The Upper Indus Plain	(b) Kharan Desert
(22)	(c) The Lower Indus Plain	(d) The Indus Delta
(32)	About 60% area of Bahawalpur region an	
	(a) <u>Cholistan Desert</u>	(b) Thal Desert
	(c) Thar and Nara Desert	(d) Chaghai and Kharan Desert
(33)	This desert in Pakistan is the extension of	of Rajhastan Desert in India:
	(a) Chaghai and Kharan Desert	(b) Thar and Nara Desert
	(c) Thal Desert	(d) Cholistan Desert
(34)	The length of Sindh Coast is about:	国際部に
,	(a) <u>200km</u> (b) 300km	(c) 400km (d) 500km
(35)	The length of Makran Coast is about:	
(33)	(a) 300km (b) <u>500km</u>	(c) 700km (d) 900km
(20)		
(36)		
	(a) Lahore and Gujrat	(b) Dera Ismail Khan and Dera Ghazi Khan
	(c) Larkana and Sukkur	(d) Karachi and Hyderabad
(37)		A CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR
	(a) <u>Karachi</u> (b) Pasni	(c) Ormara (d) Jeewani

This desert lies in the South of Bahawalpur: (38)Thal Desert (b) Nara Desert (c) Cholistan Desert (d Tharparkar Desert The Manchar Lake is located in: (39)(a) Dadu (b) Sehwan (c) Kashmore (d) Sanghar The more populated area than the other places is: (40)Plateau (b) Mountain (c) Plain (d) Desert (41)The port which has recently been extended in Balochistan is: (a) Giddani (b) Gawadar (c) Pasni (d) Ormara (42)Cholistan Desert is in: (a) Sindh (b) Punjab Balochistan Khyber Pakhtun Khwa The highest peak of the Hindukush is: (43)Takht-e-Sulaiman (b) Tirich Mir (c) K-2 (d) Nanga Parbat (44) Silk route is the symbol of friendship between: (a) Iran and Pakistan (b) Afghanistan and Pakistan China and Pakistan (c) (d) India and Pakistan The Doab which lies between the river Sindh and river Jhelum is called: (45)Rachna Doab (b) Chaj Doab (c) Sindh Sagar Doab (d) Bari Doab (46) The Doab lies between the river Chenab and river Jhelum is called: Sindh Sagar Doab (a) (b) Chaj Doab (c) Rachna Doab (d) Bari Doab (47)This Doab is located between the river Ravi and river Chenab: Rachna Doab (b) Bari Doab (c) Chaj Doab (d) Sindh Sagar Doab The Doab which is located in between the river Sutlej and river Ravi is called: (48)(a) Sindh Sagar Doab (b) Bari Doab (c) Chaj Doab (d) Rachna Doab (49)The desert Kharan is located in the province: The Punjab (b) Balochistan Khyber Pakhtun Khwa (c) · (50)The Thar Desert is located in the province:
(a) Sindh (b) The Punjab Khyber Pakhtun Khwa (d) Balochistan



Chapter 5

THE CLIMATE OF PAKISTAN

IMPORTANT SHORT QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

Q1 Write down five sentences on the climate of Pakistan. (OR) Write down five features of the climate of Pakistan.

Ans: The Climate of Pakistan

Five sentences on the climate of Pakistan are following.

(i) Geographically, Pakistan is located very near to the monsoon climatic region in the west.

(ii) The climate of Pakistan is collectively dry and hot.

(iii) In mountaineous region of the Pakistan highland type of climate is found due to the height from the sea-level.

(iv) In the plains, there is extremely hot in the months of June and July.

- (v) Cyclones in the monsoon cause rainfall in Pakistan during summer. In winter, the winds reverse and they prevail from North-West to South-East. During winter rainfall is quite insufficient.
- Q.2 Differentiate between Weather and Climate.

Ans: Difference between Weather and Climate

	WEATHER		CLIMATE
(1)	The study of atmospheric conditions of a region for a short period of time is called Weather.	(1)	The study of the seasonal conditions of a region for a long period is called Climate.
(2)	Weather explains the conditions of air, humidity and rainfall during one year.	(2)	The climate helps to classify the world into different climatic regions.
(3)	Weather collects the changes in the stmosphere for a short period of time.	(3)	The climate collects information about atmospheric changes for a long period.
(4)	The season explains the growth of living organisms and soil according to seasonal changes within a short period.		The climate explains the growth of living organisms and soil according to georaphical location.
(5)	Weather divides the seasonal conditions of a region into rainfall, winter, summer, spring and autumn within a period of one year.		The climate divides the whole world into geographical regions for a long period of time.

Q.3 Write down the seasons appearing during the period of one year Pakistan.

Ans: The Seasons of Pakistan

The seasons which appear during the period of one year are following.

- (i) The hot weather season April to June
- (ii) The monsoon season —— July to September
- (iii) The autumn or the past monsoon period October and November (iv) Cold weather season December to March

2)

(4)

45)

(47

(41

(4

(!

Write down the names of the factors of the formation of the climate. 50 Q.4 Iqra Commercial Geography for Class X Ans: The Factors of the Climate The names of the factors of the formation of the climate are following. Physical features Height above sea level (v) Natural vegetation (iv) Distance from the sea

Write down the names of the elements which are measured in the climate Q.5

The Elements of the Climate

The elements which are measured in climate of place are following.

(iv) Humidity (v)

Air Pressure The Speed and direction of wind (iii) Rainfall

Write a note on Summer Monsoon and Winter Monsoon Winds in Q.6

Summer Monsoon Winds in Pakistan

During monsoon, low pressure is occurred on the sub-continent in May and June which attracts the winds from the Indian Ocean which burst blow over the land about the middle of June. These monsoon winds enter Pakistan after crossing India. These monsoon winds bring heavy rainfall in Pakistan in summer season. In summer the plains of Pakistan are heated as a result they become areas of low pressure. These areas attract winds from the high pressure areas over the ocean. In the month of July, the monsoon rainfall rate becomes high and this rainfall remain continue till the month of August. In some years, the monsoon remains active even in September.

Winter Monsson Winds in Pakistan

In winter season, the plains of Pakistan are cold, thus the areas of high pressure of wind are formed here. Due to this, the winds from these areas blow out towards the ocean during winter season. Winter monsoon winds do not cause any rainfall in Pakistan. Q.7

Write a note on Winter Rainfall in Pakistan.

Ans: Winter Rainfall in Pakistan

Winter rainfall in Pakistan is occurred because of the western depression, which originates in the Mediterranean Sea. These western winds travel across Afghanistan and Iran and enter Pakistan through its western parts. These winds bring a small amount of rainfall in Pakistan, because they are robbed on their long way journey, they precipitate most of their moisture over Middle East. The western highland in the western parts of Pakistan receive more rainfall during winter from the western depressions. These depressions begins in December and continue in full strength upto March, they also cause snowfall on the mountains of Pakistan.

Describe briefly the distribution of Summer Rainfall in Pakistan. Q.8

The Distribution of Summer Rainfall in Pakistan

During summer, the rainfall in Pakistan is occurred due to summer monsoon in the months of July, August and September. Nearly three quarters of rainfall in Pakistan is due to Summer-(i)

The highest average rainfall is in North-Eastern Mountains. These mountains receive 100cm annual summar rainfall. Muree and Chitral and other areas are included in this region.

The foothills of Northern mountains receive average rainfall 50cm annually. Sialkot, (ii) Lahore, Rawalpindi etc. are included in the areas.

In Sindh and Balochistan the rate of rainfall is little. Only 5cm rainfall is occurred in (iii) Balochistan and 10cm rainfall is occurred in Sindh annually.

Write down the names of Arid and Semi-arid areas of Pakistan where rainfall is scanty. Write also the distribution of rainfall in these areas

Ans: The Arid and Semi-Arid Areas of Pakistan

The names of the Arid and Semi-arid areas of Pakistan and the distribution of rainfall in these areas are following.

The Deserts of Thar, Nara, Cholistan, Thal and Kharan. In these areas the rate of rainfail is (i)

The Potwar Plateau and the Balochistan Plateau. The rate of rainfall on these plateaus is (ii) about 10cm.

The Southern Areas of Sindh. In these areas the rate of rainfall is 20cm.

- The Coastal areas of Pakistan. The rate of rainfall in all coastal areas of Pakistan is about (iii) (iv) 15cm.
- Western Mountaineous Areas. In these areas, the rate of rainfall is about 20cm.
- (v) Q.10 Write a note on Thunderstorms Rainfall in Pakistan.

Ans: Thunderstorms Rainfall in Pakistan

The driest months in Pakistan throughout a year are April, June, October and November. During these months, thunderstorms are formed in Pakistan. These thunderstomes bring localized rainfall. In the extreme North of Pakistan, the areas of Chitral, Murree Hills and Koh-i-Safed receive more than 12.5cm rainfall because of thunderstorms. This rainfall commonly occurred during April to June. In the rest of Pakistan the rainfall due to thunderstorms is less than 5cm while over Sindh and Balochistan it is only 2.5cm. In Octoer and November the driest season is occurred in Pakistan which is commonly known as Autumn. Thunderstorms during this period bring more than 5cm rainfall over a few patches of the Northern Mountains. In the rest of Pakistan commonly 2.5cm rainfall is occurred during this period.

Q.11 Describe the distribution of Summer Temperature in the various regions of Pakistan.

Ans: The Summer Temperature in Pakistan

Collectively, the temperature in the summer season remains very high except in the mountains of North-East and West where the temperature remains moderate. Hot summer mean temperature is 32°C which is experienced over a large area which extends from the upper Indus Plain to the Southern and the Western Balochistan. In the Indus Plain the month of June is the hottest month and Sibbi is the hottest area. The mean temperature at Sibbi is 38°C while at Jaccobabad is 36.8°C. The areas surrounding Sibbi and Jaccobabad also become very hot during the summer season. In Jaccobabad the maximum mean temperature is 49°C, therefore Jaccobabad is considered as the Thermal Pole of the sub-cotinent.

In Pakistan, the summer season is not only hot but also long. In Central Indus Plain and the Southern Balochistan, the summer season begins in March and continues upto October. As compared to the plains, the temperature in the mountainous area, the temperature in the hottest month of July remains very low. The temperature of Drvesh remains 31°C, the temperature of Murree remains 25.8°C while the temperature of Quetta remains 31°C, during this month. In the coastal areas of Pakistan including Karachi, the temperature remains moderate during summer. The maximum mean temperature of Karachi is 35°C while the minimum mean temperature is 296 Company

Q.12 Describe the distribution of winter temperature in the various regions of Pakistan.

Ans: The Winter Temperature in Pakistan

The temperature in the various regions of Pakistan decreases during winter season. The temperature decreases towards the North and westwards sea ports of Pakistan. The temperature of the coastal areas remains moderate due to their nearness to the sea while in the Indus Plain, the 16

(4

temperature goes from moderate to cool. The season remains very cold in the mountainous and semi-mountainous areas of Pakistan and there temperature falls below the freezing point because

The winter season prevails from the month of November to February in the central Indus Plain and Southern Balochistan while in the Northern Punjab and the Western Balochistan, the winter season prevails from November to March. The temperature in these areas remains 10°C to 21°C. January is the coldest month in Pakistan. Due to Western Depression, the cold waves are observed in the Balochistan plateau and Karachi. In the region of the western mountains, the winter season is long and it prevails from October to April. During the coldest month of January, the mean temperature drops below 10°C but does not reach 0°C, however during cold spells and snowfall, the temperature goes below the freezing point. In the North of Pakistan, there are highest peaks of the world, here the temperature remains below the freezing point during the whole year.

Q.13 What is the importance of Monsoon Rainfall for Pakistan? Comment.

Ans: The Importance of Monsoon Rainfall for the Pakistan

During Monsoon season, the low pressure is developed over the Indian Ocean. The monsoon in Pakistan gains its strength until July and it remains constant to the end of the August. The mountains and the hilly areas of Pakistan receive more than 20 inches of rainfall and this amount decreases sharply in the plain areas towards South-West. The highest annual rainfall is obtained from Monsoon rainfall. The cultivation in Pakistan depends upon it, therefore monsoon

Q.14 "The climate does not effect on industrial development". Comment.

Ans: The Climate and Industrial Development

Moderate climate is necessary for industrial development, so it is not correct to say that the climate does not effect or influence on the industrial development. In some industries, the climate plays a very important role. The effect of the climate is the greatest to be seen on the establishment and working of cotton textile industries. Mild climate has advantage over the harsh climate. Thus the climate is also considered as an important factor for the establishment and localization of industries. All industries are established in those regions where the climate is

Q.15 Climate influences more marked an agriculture than industry. Comment.

Ane: The Effects of Climate on Agriculture

It is true that the climate are more marked an agriculture than industries. The elements of the climate temperature and rainfall control the agricultural activities but also the classification and cultivation are also depend upon these elements. The extreme temperature of 10oC makes egriculture impossible, similarly high temperature is also harmful for agriculture makes the cultivation very limited. The arid, very hot and deserted regions of the world are not suitable for agricultural activities and cultivation. The division of various kinds of crops is done on the basis of temperature. The rainfall also produces its influence on agriculture directly. The dry and humid areas of the world where the rate of rainfall is very low less than 10 inches are not suitable for agriculture, the distribution of the natural vegetation in the world is due to the distribution of rainfall and temperature. Thus it can be said that the climate influences more marked on

Q.16 Karachi records lower temperature in summer and higher in winter as

Ans: Comparative Analysis of the Season in Labore and Karachi

Lahore is located in Upper Indus Plain. Land type climate is found here due to the distance from the ocean. Due to the extreme heat of the sun, 60% of the total time period is associated with summer. Warm winds blow for weeks during Summer. June is the warmest month of the year. During rainy season, the temperature decreases but confinment becomes appear from time to time which produces great difficulty. Cold is also very severe in winter season.

Karachi is located in the lower Indus Plain. The climate of Karachi is better than Lahore. The temperature of Karachi is not increased because of land breeze and sea breeze. Land breeze and sea breeze blow throughout a year in the areas of Karachi. Winter is also not very severe in Karachi as compared to Lahore.

Q.17 Coastal areas record lower temperature in summer and highest in winter as compared to inner areas. Comment.

Ans: Analysis of Temperature in Inner Areas and Coastal Areas of Pakistan

The inner areas of Pakistan are located in the Upper Indus Plain. Land type climate is found in these areas due to their distance from the Northern mountains and ocean. Due to the extreme heat of the sun, the inner areas of Pakistan are associated 60% of the total time period throughout a year with summer season and hotness. June is the warmest month of the year. During rainy season, the temperature decreases but confinement appears from time to time. Cold is also very severe during winter.

The coastal areas of Pakistan are located in the Lower Indus Plain. The temperature of the coastal areas remains better as compared to inner areas. The temperature of the coastal areas is not increased due to land breeze and sea breeze. There is no distinguishing difference in the temperature throughout a year. During summer, the temperature remains moderate and during winter, the temperature remains high as compared to the winter season. Hence it is said that coastal areas record lower temperature in summer and higher in winter as compared to inner areas.

Q.18 The Monsson and the Western disturbances are two main factors which affect the climate of Pakistan.

Ans: The Factors Affecting the Climate of Pakistan

The climate of Pakistan is of hard nature according to geographical point of view. This means the summer season is hot while winter season is cold, there is a difference in the temperature during summer and winter and the major portion of the country is dry. The temperature in some areas of plains becomes 120°F during summer while in some areas of plains, the temperature goes below the freezing point. Two seasons in Pakistan are important, the summer which prevails from the month May to the middle of September while the winter season prevails from November to February. The rainfall in Pakistan is common from July to September therefore, it is called Monsoon season. The Monsoon and the Western distrubances are the two major factors affect the climate of Pakistan.

(I) The Monsoon

South-West Monsoon occurs in Pakistan during the summer season. It appears in the month of June and remains till the month of September. It occurs in almost whole Pakistan excluding the Western Balochistan, FATA, Chitral and Gilgit, Baltistan. The Monsoon rainfall in Pakistan provides relief from the extreme hotness in the summer season. This rainfall is also a source of irrigation in Pakistan. The Monsoon rainfall in Pakistan are quite heavy by nature and they can cause flooding in Pakistan.

(ii) The Western Distrubances

The Western distrubances mostly occur in Pakistan during winter season. The Western distrubances originate in the Mediterranean Sea. They travel across Afghanistan and Iran and then they enter Pakistan through the Western parts of Pakistan. The Western distrubances cause a moderate rainfall in the Southern parts of Pakistan, however they bring a heavy snowfall in the Northern parts of Pakistan.



Write down five sentences in the effect of the climate on human life in different regions of Pakistan.

The Effects of the Climate on Human Life

The effects of the climate on human life in various regions of Pakistan are following.

The plain areas of Pakistan have severe hot season during summer and fairly cold during (i) winter. During winter, it is possible to work diligently but during summer the working efficiently decreases. The land and climate of these areas is suitable for agriculture, therefore agriculture is the main occupation of people.

In Northern Mountainous areas of Pakistan, the winter is extremely cold. The temperature (ii) falls below the freezing point. During winter people are confined to their homes. People pay attention to household cottage industry. Some people of this area temporarily migrate

to plain areas.

(

Most of the Southern areas of Pakistan are desert and hot. Windstorms and sandy cyclones (iii) below frequently. People use coarse clothes to protect hem from heat and hot wind. They travel in night because the desert in night are cold. The people breed sheeps, goats and

In thickly populated areas, the people become habitual with the changes of the climate. Means of transportation are convinient. Educational and other facilities are available. Some (iv) poeple do private and public jobs while some are associated with trade and personal

The Balochistan Plateau and other areas of Balochistan have extreme climate. Winter is cold and in some areas there is snowfall. During winter people are engaged in indoor (v) activities. Many people of cold areas migrate to warm areas and return back in summer. In summer, the plains of Balochistan become very hot. People use loose clothes. Water is collected through underground artificial streams called Karez.

Q.20 Write down the names of the climatic regions of Pakistan.

Ans: The Climatic Regions of Pakistan

On the basis of the climate and temperature Pakistan is divided into following regions.

Sub-tropical coast lands (i)

Sub-tropical continental Lowlands (ii)

Sub-pical continental Highlands (iii)

Sub-tropical continental Plateau (iv)

IMPORTANT DETAILED TYPE QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

Describe in detail, the climatic regions of Pakistan. Q.1

Ans: The Climatic Regions of Pakistan

The study of long lasting conditions in a particular area or country is called the Climate. The weather conditions related to the climate are included air pressure, temperature, humidity and rainfall.

Pakistan is located in the North of Tropic of cancer. Pakistan is a subtropical country. It is situated in the Western side of the monsoon region. Some of the areas in the North of Pakistan areas warm and moist. Whereas the mountainous area have highland type of climate. In the summer season, monsoon winds cause to produce rainfall but these rainfall is unpredictable. If a common review of the rainfall is taken of the climate of Pakistan then it is called as Tropical Type of climate in which the season remains usually dry or sub dry. The summer monsson brings maritime influences and rain, but there are annual variations in the strength of monsoon currents. In winter the climatic conditions are quite different. In this season, the winds reverse and they permit from prevail from the North-West to the South-West. In winter, rainfall is quite insufficient and its usefulness for agriculture is further reduced by its nature. The average temperature in month of

January in the plains of Pakistan is 4°C and the maximum temperature of the same months is 24°C whereas the minimum temperature of the months of June and July is 30°C and the maximum temperature in the same months is 48°C. The maximum temperature of Sibbi and Jacobad is about 50°C.

Pakistan is divided into following four climatic regions.

(1) Sub-Tropical Continental Highlands

In this region of the climate, snowfall is common during winter. Summer season is quite cool and in spring and winter seasons, there is mostly fog and rainfall and some areas of this region like outer Himalayas, Murree and Hazara districts, rainfall continues throughout the year.

Sub-tropical continental is further divided into following minor regions.

(i) Humid Outer Himalayas Region

In this region, the Murree Hill's and adjacent parts of Hazara are included. In these areas rainfall is received from the monsoon and the Western distrubances. The amount of rainfall in this region is very high. The annual rate of rainfall at Murree Hills is 64 inches. The snowfall appears in this region at the end of December and it prevails till the end of February. During summer the temperature remains low. The maximum average temperature in Murree is $26^{\circ}C$ during the month of June which is the warmest month in Pakistan.

(ii) Sub-Humid and Semi-Arid Region

The North posterior and the Northern parts of the Himalayan Mountainous Range are included in this region. The great variation of rainfall is observed in this region. The annual rate of rainfall in Kashmir Valley is 25 inches while in Zhob is 10 inches. In this region thunderstorms are common from February to October. Kashmir Valley, the Valley of Sawat, the Valley of Chitral, Zhob and Loralai are included in this climatic region.

(iii) Arid North-East and North West Highland

This region is located in the central and in the South-Western part of Balochistan. Winter season is very severe in this region. The temperature also remain very low during winter. Snowfall is also appear in this region. During winter season, the temperature goes below the freezing point. Gilgit, Skardu and Baltistan are included in this region.

(iv) South-Western Highlands

This region is very dry and barren. The average annual rate of rainfall in this region is less than 10 inches. The rainfall occurs during the months of January and February. During winter the temperature goes below the freezing point. This region is sub-divided into Quetta, Sarawan. Makran and Jhalawan. In Quetta the annual rate of rainfall is 9.5 inches which is mostly occurs during winter.

(2) Sub-Tropical Continental Plateau

In this region the most parts of the province Balochistan are included. In this region, the winter season is intensive and the temperature falls below the freezing point and there is also some rainfall during winter season which cause to produce grass. From May to the Middle of September hot and dusty winds continously blow. Sibbi and Jaccobabad are located in this region. There is a few millimetres of rainfall appears during the months of January and February. Extreme hot dry and dusty winds are the important characteristics of this region. Chaghi and Kharan deserts are also located in this region.

(3) Sub-Tropical Continental Lowlands

All the plains of Pakistan are included in this region. Summer is very hot in this region and the temperature remains high during summer. The monsoon rainfall appears in the last part of the summer. The winter season remains moderate, cold and dry. The North of the Punjab receives last summer monsoon rains while the rest of the Punjab receives less rainfall. Winter rainfall situation is also same. The Kuch, Sibbi and South-Eastern plains are dry and a large areas is desert. The Peshawar plain experiences thunderstorms and dust storms during summer. There is a variation of the climate of this extensive region, it is further divided into following parts.

(i) The Western Sub-Mountainous Region

This region is located from the Kohat hills to the Arabian Sea. This region is dry and barren and is inudated by hill torrents. High temperature and low rainfall are the major characteristics of this region. Kohistan is the driest in this region which is located in the West of Sindh. Dera Ismail Khan and Dera Ghazi Khan are also located in this region.

(ii) The Central Irrigated Plain

This region is located in the province Punjab and in the Central Sindh. The annual rate of rainfall in this region is about 25cm. Summer season is very hot and long, however the temperature remains moderate during winter. This is a thickly populated region. The monsoon winds bring rainfall and rainfall is common in the months of July and August.

(iii) The Eastern Unirrigated Plain

The desert of Cholistan in the eastern part of Bhawalpur and the associated part of Khairpur in the province Sindh are included in this region. The rainfall is very low and the temperature changes occur, winters are also cold here. The climate of Potwar Plateau and Northern submountain areas of this region is relatively better.

(4) Sub-Tropical Coastlads

The climatic region has a moderate climate. The difference between the maximum and the minimum temperature is very less. There is influence of sea breeze throughout the summer and the humidity is high. The annual average temperature of this region is 32°C and rainfall is 180 millimetres. May and June are the hottest months in this region. This region is further divided into following parts.

(i) The Makran Coast

45

46

(4'

(4

The rate of rainfall is relatively low the Makran Coast. The rainfall occurs during the months December to February. The total rainfall in this area is about 15cm out of which 10cm rainfall occurs during the month of January. The weather remains fine except these months.

(ii) The Lasbela Coast

This region remains very hot during eight months. The average temperature during the summer is about 40°C but during winter the temperature remains moderate. The rate of rainfall is low in this region but rainfall occurs both in summer and winter.

(iii) The Sindh Coast

This region has uncertain rainfall. The average rate of rainfall in this region is 19cm. Kerachi is also included in this region. Sometime tropical cyclones brings a heavy rainfall, similarly rainfall occurs in this region sometimes after many years. The average temperature of this region remains between 26°C to 32°C.

Q.2 Describe the effects of the Climate on the Economy of Pakistan.

Ans: The Effects of the Climate on the Economy of Pakistan

The effects of the climate on the Economy of Pakistan can be described as following.

(i) Agriculture

In the Northern areas of Pakistan, the winter is very severe, snowfall is common which helps in the flow of river Indus and Tributaries throughout a year. Thus agricultural activities are carried on due to availability of water in rivers.

(ii) Variety in the Use of Commodities

There is a difference in dress, food, habitat and occupations of the people in the different climatic regions of Pakistan. This difference helps in the production of a variety of commodities according to their use in different regions.

(iii) Fishing in Rivers

Fish is caught from the river Indus and from its tributaries. This fish is not only a source of food but it promotes also fresh water fishing and thus provides employment to the people of Pakistan.

Timber and Dry Fruit

Forests are located in the Northern and Western Mountains due to rainfall on these mountains. These forests provide timber for construction and furniture manufacturing. Different kinds of dry fruits are also obtained from the trees of these forests.

(v) The Cultivation of Crops

The cultivation of different crops in Pakistan like cotton, rice, sugercane, maize, wheat etc. is only possible because of the difference of the climate in the various regions of Pakistan. These cultivation activities of crops provide food and also fulfill the requirement of the industries.

The Classification of Cultivation

The difference of the climate in the various regions of Pakistan is helpful in the classification of crops for cultivation. The cultivation of cotton in the southern punjab and in the areas of Sindh is due to dry season and irrigation. The world's best quality of cotton is cultivated in Pakistan is due to the differences in the climate. The rate of rainfall is very high in the South-West regions of the country during winter which helps in the production of grass. In these areas pastures play a role in cattle rearing which provide the requirements of food as well as dress. The woolen industry and expect making in Pakistan is established due to this animal keeping in these areas.

Different kinds of vegetation grow in different parts of Pakistan which provide wood,

peanut, gram and other pulses in Pakistan.

IMPORTANT MULTIPLE CHOICE OU

Ciwos	e true	torrett answ	er je	ir each of the fol	HOW	ing from the	give	n options:
(1)		er season prevai						
	(a)	October to Fel	ruar	y	(b)	December to A	1arc	
	(c)	October to Ap			(d)	September to		
(2)	Sum			n Pakistan from:	`\			
	(a)	April to June			(b)	March to July	= .	
	(c)	February to A	ugus			September to		Mary .
(3)	It is	the hottest place			, ,			
	(a)	Quetta	(b)	Peshawar	(a)	Jaccobabad	(d)	Larkana
(4)	Clim	atically Jacobaba	ad an	d Sibbi are:	`\		447	LAU AUDA
	(a)	Coldest	(b)	Most humid	(c)	Hottest	(d)	Most moderate
(5)	It is	the coldest place	e of F	akistan:			(,	most moderate
	(a)	Murree	(b)	Abbotabad	(c)	Naran	(b)	Skurdu
(6)	The	climate of Pakis	tan is	S:		No. of the second	(-)	27444
	(a)	Hot and dry			(c)	Hot and humi	(b)b	Cold and dry
(7)	The	average annual	rainfa	ll in Pakistan is:	` '		- (-)	cold and dry
	(a)	20 inches		30 inches	(c)	25 inches	(d)	35 inches
(8)	The	number of clima	tic r	gions in Pakistan is	:		(/	or menes
	(a)	Two	(b)	Three	(c)	Four	(d)	Five
(9)	All t	he rivers of Pak	istan	meet the river Indu	s at:		(-)	
	(a)	Mithan Kot	(b)	Panjand	(c)	Thatta	(d)	Guddu
(10)		main cause of s	חניתו	er rainfall in Pakista	n is:			
	(a)	Monsoon	(b)	Westerlies (c)	Sibe	erian Winds(d)	Med	literranean Winds
(11)		winter rainfall o	ccur	s in Pakistan becaus	e of:			Trialis
	(a)	Monsoon win	ds		(b)	Western depre	essio	n '
	(c)	Local winds			(d)			
(12)		akistan, the cau			4			
	(a)			Tarbela Dam	(c)	Arabian Sea	(d)	Bay of Bengal
(13).	The	temperature of	the o	ountries nearest to t	he ec	uator is:	/	- Josephan
	(a)	Very low	(b)	Very high			(d)	None of these

(c) Moderate

(d) None of these

Compress Arm	th in Dakietan	is:		•		
(14)	The driest and the hottest month in Pakistan i	(c)	September	(d)	December	
	(4)					
(15)	Rainfall in Pakistan in winter: (a) Winter winds (b) Summer winds (a) Hind of rainfall in Pakistan in Pakistan in winter:	(c)	Cyclones	(d)	Sea breeze	: 1
		cistan	1:			
(16)	The monsoon bring this kind of familian	(b)	Winter rainfall			
. 4	(a) Summer rainfait	(d)	Dry rainfall			
2.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	CCIITE	in:			M.
(17)	The minimum monsoon rainfall in Pakistan o	(c)	Gilgit	(d)	Nokundi	
\/				,-/		
(18)	The maximum monsoon rainfall in Pakistan C	/_\	Lahore	(b)	Karachi	
(10)	(a) Murree (b) Gilgit	(c)	hole year the w	ealth	remains:	
(19)	(a) <u>Murree</u> (b) Gilgit In the coastal areas of Pakistan, throughout t	nie M	Madaurt	(4)	Warm and	1 humid
(13)	(a) Very hot (b) Very cold	(c)	Moderate	tan !	A STITE STITE	
(20)	The highest average rainfall in North-Eastern	1 Mou	intains of Pakis	(A)	3. 100cm	
(20)	(b) 50cm	(-)	80cm	(a)	<u>190cm</u>	
(21)	The average rate of rainfall in Balochistan is:	;	• 000000	/15	10	
(21)	(b) 5cm	(0)	8cm	(d)	10cm	
(22)	The average annual rate of rainfall in Sindh i	is:		/**	25.	
(22)				(d)	25cm'	
(0.0)	Commel minfall in Potwar	r Plate	eau and Balochi	stan .	Plateau is:	
(23)						. ie.
/a **	1 man of mainfall in the are	eas of	Western Mount	tains	of Pakistan	1 15:
(24)	(L) 12 am	100	13411			
10 -1	1 1 1 shange their dire	ction	according to sea	ason .	is:	
(25)		וע) ו	MACING OUT 11 V.	1444		
		(d)	Autumn Win	ds _		
	(c) Westerlies The rainfall season prevails in Pakistan from	n:	a a Balli a 7			
(26)		- (D)	August to No	vem	ber	
	(a) July to Se; tember	(d) February to A	April		
.	(c) January to April) Winter rainfall in Pakistan is vital for:				THE SECTION AND ADDRESS.	. 1 . 1
(27)		(c)) Khyber Pakh	tun I	Khwa(d) 1	Balochistan
	(a)				- J- I	
(28)		(Ъ)' October and	Nov	ember_	
	Ar as and April	(d	l) November ar	nd De	ecember	
	' and of raintall	in Pal	kistan is:			
(29	/h) 75%	1.	3070	(d	1) 75%	
	the coa	stal a	reas of Pakistan	ı is:		
(30		(0	c) <u>32°C</u>	(d	d) 49°C	
	(a) $20^{\circ}C$ (b) 25 C			25%		





CHAPTER

the soil classification in

IMPORTANT SHORT QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

Define Soil and describe the importance of Soil. Q.1

Ans: Soll

The upper layer of the Earth with certain components which helps in the growth of plants is called Soil. The components of the soil are solid particles, organic matter and returns. The components are not packed properly.

Importance of Soil

- The importance of soil can be described as following.

 The soil provides help in the growth of natural vegetation. (i)
- The soil is responsible for the quantity of crops. If soil is fertile, the quantity of crops is (ii) increased.
- (iii)
- Soil provides help in producing varieties of crops.

 Soil organizes the agricultural activities of a certain place. (iv)
- The soil of a certain place determines the nature of vegetation of that place (v)
- Describe briefly about the two major groups of Soil. Q.2

The Major Groups of Soil Ansı

The soil is classified into two major groups which are following.

Residual or Local Soil **(I)**

The soil which is formed after the decaying process of a certain region is called Local or Residual Soil. This soil is formed because of the erosion of rocks due to seasonal changes. This soil remains at the same place after its formation. This kind of soll is found in the mountainous region and plateaus in Pakistan.

Transported Soil (II)

The soil which is transferred from one place to another due to external and internal factors is called as Transported Soil. This soil stays in the area after its transportation. Transported soil is found in the plains of Pakistan. It has been transported have due to the factors of air and water from its original place to the plains of Pakistan. There are following two types of Transported Soil.

Alluviam Soil (a)

The soil which is transported from one place to another and deposited after its transportation through water is celled Alluvian Soil. It is the soil which is carried by water. Follows example the soil of Indus Valley in Pakistan.

(b) Locss Soil

The soil which is transported from one place to another and deposited after its transportation through air is called Loess Soil. It is the soil which is carried by air. For example the soil of Balochistan is Loess Soil.

00	*** **		- 1						
Q.3	Write	down	the	names	of	organic	materials	of	soil.

(v)

Ans: The Organic Materials of Soil

The organic materials found in soil are following.

Plants

(iv)

- (iii) Animal wastes
- Micro organisms (100)
- (v) Decompressed organic matter Q.4 Write down the names of inorganic materials found in soil of a place.

Ans: Inorganic Materials in Soil

Leaves

The inorganic materials which are found in the soil of a place are following.

- (i) Clay (iv) Gravel
- Sand

(45)

Materials

Limestone Q.5 Describe any five factors for the formation of Soil of a particular place.

Ans: The Factors for the Formation of Soil

The factors which are responsible for the formation of soil of a particular place are following.

(ī) Topography

Topography is an important factor for slopes while it becomes thick in a hollow place.

Climate

Climate also pays its role in the formation of soil and moisture are the conditions which produce their effects o tion of soil and thus develop the structure of soil

Water (iii)

Water is also an important factor which plays an essent nature of soil at a particular place. Without the presence of water role in the formation of the do not take place.

(iv) Plants and Animals

Both plants and animals highly produce their inf of the soil of a particular place. Both plants and animals m n the fertility of the soil. Plants are directly involved in making the soil fertile while the animals decr enhance soil facility.

(v) Time

The formation of soil is a long, delayed and complex process. It takes long period, therefore time is an essential factor for the formation of a soil at a particular place.

Describe five kinds of soil on the basis of colour.

Ans: The Kinds of Soil on the Basis of Colour

On the basis of colour, the kinds of soil are following.

Arid Red Soil (i)

The kind of soil contains a large amount of minerals like iron and phosphorus. It is suitable for cultivation. This kind of soil is found in the mountainous region of Khyber Pathi

(ii) Blackish Soil

This kind of soil is formed from volcanoes. This kind of soil is found in Jaccobabad, Sibbi and Dera Ghazi Khan. This kind of soil is fertile and suitable for agriculture.

Brown Soil

This soil has dark brown colour and its is found in Himalayan region. Hindukush mountains and in the Salt Range. This soil is fertile and cultivation is done on this soil.

(iv) Gray Soil

This kind of soil is found in Pakistan in Doabs and in these regions where the climate is dry. This kind of soil is fertile and suitable for agriculture.

(v) Yellow Soil

This kind of soil is also known as Sandy Soil. This kind of soil is found in the deserts of Pakistan. In Pakistan this kind of soil is found in the deserts of Tharparkar, Thal and Cholistan.

Q.7 Define Soil and write the names of different kinds of Soil.

Ans: Soil

(i)

e

ıd

d,

is

ın

bi

sh

The upper layer of the Earth with certain components which helps in the growth of plants is called Soil.

Kinds of Soil

The kinds of soil in Pakistan are following.

- The soil of North-Eastern Mountainous Region.
- (ii) The soil of North-Western Mountainous Region.
- (iii) The soil of Potwar Plateau and Balochistar. Plateau or Loess Soil.
- (iv) The soil of Upper Indus Plain or Alluviam Soil.
- (v) The soil of Lower Indus Plain or Alluviam Soil.
- (vi) The soil of Doabs Region or Bhangar Soil.
- (vii) The soil of deserts.
- (viii) The soil of Indus Delta.
- Q.8 Bhangar Soil is the best soil for agriculture in the country. Comment

Ans: Bhangar Soil

The soil which is found in the Upper Indus Plain in the Doabs region is called as Bhangar or Bhangar Soil. These plain is located at distant parts and is safe from floods, so the ancient soil has been brought here by the river Indus and its tributaries. This soil contains large quantity of lime, so it is considered as the best soil for agriculture.

Q.9 Write the classification of the soil found in Pakistan.

(2)

Ans: The Classification of Soil in Pakistan

The classification of soil in different areas of Pakistan can be described as following.

(i) Indus Basin Soil

The soil which has been formed by depositing the alluviam by the river Indus and its Tributaries is called as Indus Basin Soil. This soil covers a large of Indus Plain. It is further divided into following groups.

Khaddar Soil

(1) Bongar Soil
(ii) Mountain Soil

The soil which is found in the mountainous regions of Pakistan is collectively known as Mountain Soil. This soil is residual as well as Transported under arid and semi-arid conditions. In the mountainous valleys, soil is formed from the alluvial deposits of the streams.

(3)

Delta Soil

(iii) Sandy Desert Soil

This soil extend over some areas of Balochistan, Cholistan and Thar deserts. The colour of this soil is yellow which contains ingredients like phosphorus, iron, potash and lime stome which are essential for the fertility of soil. The colour of the soil of Tharparker and Nara is yellowish.

IMPORTANT DETAILED TYPE QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

What is meant by Soil? Describe about the soils of different regions of Q.1

Ans: Soil

The upper layer of the Earth with certain components which helps in the growth of plants is called Soil. Solid materials, organic matter and water are three major components of soil.

The Soil in Different Regions of Pakistan

The classification of soil according to different regions of Pakistan can be described as following. (1)

The Soil of North-Eastern Mountainous Region

The soil which is found in the North-Eastern Region of Pakistan is of brown colour. This soil has been formed due to errosion of rocks. This soil contains large quantity of lime but organic matter are in small quantity. The colour of the soil is brown and the thickness of the layer of the soil is about 12cm to 180cm.

The Soll of North-Western Mountainous Region (2)

The soil of North-Western Mountainous Region in Pakistan is reddish in colour. In these mountains, Waziristan Hills, Kirthar mountains and a number of mountains of Balochistan are included. Mountainous valleys are also included in these mountains. This soil contains sand, loam and silt. Different other minerals are also found in this soil.

The Soil of Potwar Plateau (3)

In this region, the central mountains and the area of Potwar Plateau is included. This region consists of plains, narrow valleys and some mountains. Sandy soil, clay and the loamy soil is found here. Dusty soil is also found in this region but it contains thick layers of clay and loamy

The Soil of Indus Plains (4)

The Indus Plain consists of the areas of the province Punjab and the province Sindh. The soil found in these plains is classified as Alluvial Soil. It is transported soil which is formed by the soil brought by the river Indus and its tributaries. The soil of Indus Plains further divided into following types.

(i) Bongar Soil

The soil which is found in those areas of the Indus Plains which remains safe from the floods is called Bongar Soil. This kind of soil is found in the regions of Doabs. It is very productive soil when irrigated and fertilized. This soil covers a vast areas in the Indus Plain, including most of the area of the Punjab, Peshawar, Bannu and the greater part of the Indus Plain.

(ii) Khaddar Soil

The soil which found in the Indus Plains in those areas which are affected by the floods every year is called Khaddar Soil. It is also known as Beat Soil. It is formed from the flooded layers of silt, loam and silty clay loam. This soil is found in Mardan and Bahawalpur. This soil is very fruitful for agriculture when plenty of water is added to it.

(iii) Indus Delta Soil or Ragar Soil

The soil which is found Indus Delta from South Hyderabad to the Arabian Sea Coast is called Indus Delta Soil or Ragar Soil. The colour of this soil is black and it contains wetness. Before bearing part of the sea, Indus river is distributed here into a number of branches. About one third of the area is covered by clay soil.

The Soil of Piedmont Plain (5)

The districts of the Punjab, Rawalpindi, Jhelum, Gujrat and Attock are included in this region. Besides this Suliaman mountains are also included in this region. Kuch and Bannu are also included in this region. Rivers commonly bring stones, pebbles, sand and loamy soil. This soil contains lime and clay.

(6) Sandy Desert Soil

The soil of three regions of Pakistan is known as sandy desert soil. Two regions are located in the province Punjab while one region is located in the province Sindh. Thal, Cholistan, Nara and Tharparkar deserts are included in this region. Lime Stone and quartz are present in this soil. Sandstones are also found in this soil.

The Importance of Soil for Agriculture

The soil the western mountains is not favourable due to short rate of rainfall but some grass is produced here which used as fooder for animals. In the soil of Potwar Plateau, bushes and grass are commonly produced. The soil of upper indus plain is fertile and crops are cultivate here. The soil of Indus delta having black colour is used for the cultivation of rice. Different kinds of soils in Pakistan are favourable for the production of various crops.

Q.2 Describe the classification of the soils of Pakistan on the basis of colour.

Ans: The Classification of the Soil of Pakistan on the Basis of Colour

Residual and Transported both types of soils are found in the different regions of Pakistsan. The chemical changes are developed in the soil with respect to time period, the factors which bring these changes are water, gases, decayed organic matter and living organisms. Some bacteria receive nitrogen from the atmosphere and supply it to the plants. Due to these activities, the fertility of soil is increased. The thickness of soil is from a few inches to many feet. Solid particles, sand and clay are present in the soil. Iron, lime, copper, zinc, phosphorus and potash are also present in soil organic matter consists of nitrogenous matter which is obtained from animals and plants.

On the basis of colour, the soil classification of the different regions of Pakistan can be described as following.

(1) Brown Soil

The soil has dark brown colour and it is found in the Himalayas, Hindukush, Karakoram and Salt Range mountainous region. Transported soil is formed on the mountains slopes through local streams and rivers. This soil is fertile and cultivation can be done in this soil.

(2) Arid Red Soil

Arid Red Soil is found in the region of North-Western Mountains at the height of 3000 feet. Iron and Silica are the chief components of this soil. This soil is found in Dir, Sawat and Chitral. It does not contain acidic ingredients but it can stay for long. Their type of soil is also found in Bannu, Zhob, Loralai and Quetta while the regions of Nokundi and Dalbundin are dry and barren.

(3) <u>Tropical Red Soil</u>

This type of soil is found in those regions of Pakistan where average rate of rainfall is about 10 inches and light rainfall is also ocurred during winter season. This type of soil is found in the coast of Makran, Lasbela, Qalat Valley, Mianwali and Kohat. In this type of soil grass grows immediately after rainfall but it becomes dry after rain. Organic matter and minerals are the components of this soil. It properly irrigated through canals, this soil proves beneficial for the cultivation.

(4) Gray Soil

This kind of soil is found in Jaccobabad, Kutch Plains, Sibbi, Dera Ghazi Khan, Dera Bugti and Musa Khel. Organic matter are found in this soil is less quantity. This soil contains sandy characteristics, therefore it causes to produce water logging and salinity. The use of fertilizers is necessary for increasing the fertility of soil.

(5) Sandy Loamy Soil

This soil is formed by the stones and mountainous materials. This soil is generally contains the mountainous material like Siwalik Hills. This type of soil is found in Northern Kohat,

Dera Ghazi Khan, Bannu districts. This soil contains Gypsum and Clay. It has an ability to stay and it also contains nitrogenous components and the use of fertilizers is also necessary to increase the fertility of soil.

(6) Looss Soll

This type of soil is found in Potwar Plateau and Mastung Valley. The colour of this soil is dark brown. It contains organic matter in large quantity but nitrogenous components are found in less quantity however this soil is fertile. Soil erosion process remains continue in this soil due to the shortage of vegetation and dry climate which decrease its fertility.

(7) Alluvial Soll

The soil which found in the Upper Indus Plain and Lower Indus Plain of Pakistan is called Alluvial Soil. This soil has been brought by the river Indus and its tributaries. It contains large quantity of lime, however the percentage of organic matter in this soil is short. The soil of the Upper Indus Plain has been divided into Bongar Soil, Khadar Soil and Alluvial Soil of flood plains.

(8) Loamy Soil

The soil which is a mixture of sandy soil and clay is called Loamy Soil. Loamy Soil is found in Pakistan in the Upper Indus Plain. This is very fertile soil, therefore the cultivation of every kind of crop can be done in this soil. The soil of Potwar Plateau is also loamy soil where bushes and grass commonly produced.

Q.3 Describe the problems of soil and their solution in Pakistan.

Ans: The Problems of Soil in Pakistan

There are two major problems of soil in Pakistan which are Soil Erosion and water logging and salinity. Soil erosion and salinity are the most destructive factors of the soils found in Pakistan. The problems produced by both factors are keeping the agriculture based economy of Pakistan backward.

- (i) Fast moving winds take the soil of dry mountains with movement of the currents, thus the rocks become bare and get erosion.
- (ii) Past rains also flow and transport the soil from one place to another and thus reduce the fertility of the soil.
- (iii) 80% cultivated land in Pakistan is affected by the movement of air and the flow of rain water.
- (iv) Water remains stayed for long in the deep regions of Pakistan which produces water logging and salinity. Water logging and salinity decrease the fertility of cultivated land and even make it barren.

The Solution of the Problems of Soil

Following suggestions can be given for the solution of the problems of soil in Pakistan.

- (i) The places where the slopes are found, soil usually flows with the flow of rain water. It is necessary to grow more trees at such places on the slopes. The plantation of trees is the responsibility of the Forestry Department but this work can also be done with co-operation of the cultivators and landlords.
- (ii) The places where the inclination of the slopes is high, it is necessary to grow grass and bushes at such places instead of the cultivation of organized crops.
- (iii) The places where the slopes have less height and rain water does not flow frequently, it is better to be done the terracing to stop the flow of rain water.
- (iv) Mountainous slopes should be promoted for making them pastures for cattle-rearing.
- (v) Small drains should be constructed for the drainage of excess amount of water in soil.
- (vi) Tube channels are the cheapest source of controlling water logging, therefore they should be constructed and link them to main sevarage drains.
- (vii) Tube wells should be installed in order to control water logging and salinity.
- (viii) The plantation of water absorbing plants like rice, poplur, sumal, wheat etc. should be promoted

1171

Ch

(1)

(2)

(3)

(5)

(4)

(6) (7)

(8)

(9)

(10

(1:

(1

(1

(1

(1

(1

(1

IMPORTANT MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS - MCQs

Choos	se the correct answer for each of the foll	owi	ng from the	give	n options.
(1)	The soil which is carried by the air is:				0.00
			Glacier Soil	(d)	Locas Soil
(2)	The soil which is carried by the water of the riv				
(-)	(a) Khadar Soil (b) Alluvial Soil	(c)	Loess Soil	(d)	Desert Soil
(3)	The colour of Sandy Soil is:				
(0)		(c)	Red	(d)	Yellow
(4)	The soil plays main role in:	(-,		` '	
(4)		(c)	Agriculture	(d)	Industries
/E)	The surface covering layer of the Earth where				
(5)			Soil	(4)	Gravel
				(4)	Giarei
(6)	The soil which formed at its original place is co	anec	i: Tannanastad (Soil (l) Loess Soil
	(a) Sandy Soil (b) Residual Soil	(c)	Transported S	out (c	place is called
(7)	The soil which is carried away from one place	and	Desert Soil	(4)	Pock Soil
	(a) Local Soil (b) Transported Soil	(c)	Desert Son	(a)	ROCK SOII
(8)	The colour of the soil of the North-Eastern Mo	ount	ains of Pakista	n 15:	P
	(a) Black (b) White	(c)	Dark Brown	(a)	Red
(9)	The colour of the soil of the North-Western M	oun	tains of Pakist	an is:	Gradual III
	(a) Dark Brown (b) Reddish	(c)	Black	(d)	Yellow
(10)	Which of the following factor is the most im	port	ant for t he for	ยาลตร	n of soil of a certain
	place?				
	(a) The Climate (b) Topography	(c)	Water	(d)	All of them
(11)	The sail which is found between the rivers of	Pun	ab is:		
,	(a) Ragar Soil (b) Khadar Soil	(c)	Loess Soil	_(d)	<u>Alluvial Soil</u>
(12)	The soil which is found in the deserts of Thal	and	Cholistan cont	ains:	7 7
(,	(a) Phosphate (b) Limestone	(c)	Iron	(d)	All of them
(13)	The soil which is found in the districts Lahore	. Gı	iiranwala, Sarg		
(10)	(a) Ragar Soil (b) Sandy Soil	(0)	Khadar Soil	(d)	Bangar Soil
(14)		ltan	. Dera Ghazi K	han a	nd Bahawalpur is:
()	(a) Bongar Soil (b) Khadar Soil	(c)	Ragar Soil	(d)	Beat Soil
(15)		-			
(13)	(a) Black (b) Red		Brown	(d)	White
(16)		(-)	2.0	(-)	
(10)	(a) Two (b) Three	(c)	Four	(4)	Five
(17)			r our	(4)	1110
(17)			Four	(4)	Five
(10)	`` \ ` 				
(18)		ıkus	ii, the Katako	tam a	nd the Sait Range is
	called:	(-)	C C11	(1)	
(10)	(a) Arid Red Soil (b) Tropical Red Soil		•		Brown Soil
(19)			•		
ć= -1	(a) Loess Soil (b) Loamy Soil		Alluvial Soil		Gray Soil
(20)					(2.00 m)
	(a) Bhangar or Bongar Soil	(b)			
	(c) Khadar Soil	(d)			
(21)	The soil which is found in the present day flo	od r	lains in Pakist	an is	called:
	(a) Bhangar or Bongar Soil		Khadar Soil		
	(c) Arid Soil	(d)		•	
(22)	The Indus Delta Soil in Pakistan is called:	(4)	Juliuy Golf		
	(a) Bongar Soil (b) Loamy Soil	(4)	Vhadas Call	(1	N C '1
	(-) Dongar out (b) Luality Sull	(c)	Khadar Soil	(a) Ragar Soil

The soil which is found in Kutch, Bannu and the districts of Rawalpindi, Jhelum, (23)(a) Indus Delta Soil (b) Sandy Desert Soil

Piedmont Plain Soil (c) (d) Arid Red Soil (24)The soil of this region consists of Alluvial Soil, Dusty Soil and Residual Soil:

The soils of Indus Delta

(b) The Soil of Indus Plains

(c) The Soil of Deserts (d) The Soil of Potwar Plateaus (25)This kind of soil contains gypsum, clay and nitrogenous components:

Loamy Soil (b) Sandy Loamy Soil (c) Loess Soil (d) Alluvial Soil





CHAPTER 7

Natural Vegetation and Irrigation System

IMPORTANT SHORT QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

Q.1 Write down five advantages of the Forests.

Ans: The Advantages of the Forests

Five advantages of the Forests are following.

- (i) The forests add the beauty to land, hence the forests make the environment of a place very attractive.
- (ii) The forests keep the temperature of the environment moderate and they are helpful in making the climate pleasant.
- (fii) Forests provide protection to human beings, animals as well as the crops against wind storms and cyclones.
- (iv) Forests help in increasing the fertility of soil, the leaves broken from trees mix in the soil, thus the fertility of soil is increased.
- (v) Forests help in decreasing the level of water logging and salinity, thus the fertility of soil is restored.
- Q.2 Name five kinds of forests found in Pakistan.

Ans: Kinds of Forests in Pakistan

The names of five kinds of forests found in Pakistan are following.

- (i) Mountainous Forests
 - Dry Western Mountains Forests
- (iii) Dry Western Mou
 (v) Canal Forests

- (ii) Sub-Mountainous Forests (iv) Riverine Forests
- (iv) Riverine Forests
- Q.3 Write five steps taken by the Government of Pakistan for the extension of the areas of forests.

Ans: The Extension of Forests and the Government

The steps taken by the Government of Pakistan for the extension of the areas of forests are following.

- (i) The Government of Pakistan has used the uncultivated land for the extension of the areas of forests.
- (ii) The Government of Pakistan has made policies for the protection of existing forests in Pakistan.
- (iii) The Government of Pakistan has established a Forestry Department to look after the forests in Pakistan.
- (iv) The Government of Pakistan has planted trees in the mountainous and canal regions in order to extend the forests in Pakistan.
- (v) The Government of Pakistan has established to plant artificial forests at many places in order to extend the area of forests in Pakistan.
- Q.4 Write five sentences on the Forests of Pakistan.

Ans: The Forests of Pakistan

A short description of the forests of Pakistan is following.

- (i) In Pakistan only 4.5% land is under forests.
- In Pakistan only 4.5% land is unuer lorests.

 The provincial distribution indicates that 2.7% land under forests in Punjab, 4.2% in Balochistan. (ii)
- Sindh, 15.6% in Knyper Pakhtun Knype and The Climate of Pakistan is too dry for growing forests except in the Northern and hill at the Climate of Pakistan is too dry for growing forests except in the Northern (iii) Sub-Mountain hills, where the forests are dense due to sufficient rainfall and hill slopes.
- In Pakistan, the forests are being reduced due to ruthless cutting of the forests, use of back (iv) for the construction of houses and due to river erosion every year.
- The Government of Pakistan has taken many steps in order to extend the area of forests in (v)
- Q.5Write any five causes of Lack of forests in Pakistan.

Ans: The Causes of Lack of Forests in Pakistan

The causes of lack of forests in Pakistan are following.

- (i) The climate of Pakistan is too dry for the proper growth of forests in Pakistan.
- (ii) The whole land of Pakistan is not suitable for the growth of forests.
- (iii) River erosion in Pakistan causes to damage the forests in Pakistan.
- The carelessness and selfishness of common man are also damaging the forests in (iv) Pakistan.
- Trees in the forests in Pakistan are being cut for commercial purposes which causes in (v) decreasing the number of forests in Pakistan.
- Write five sentences on the role of forests in the Economic Development of Q.6 Pakistan.

The Role of Forests in the Economic Development of Pakistan

The role of forests in the Economic Development of Pakistan can be described as following.

- The forests in Pakistan are a source of providing employment to half a million people in (i<u>)</u> Pakistan. Many other people are indirectly taking economic benefits through forests.
- The forests in Pakistan also provide timber for construction and firewood. (ii)
- Forests and pastures provide fooder for the cattle like goats and sheeps. Thirty million (iii) cattle are being kept on the fooder available through the forests and pastures.
- Forests in Pakistan provide raw materials for many industries in Pakistan. Furniture (iv) making, chipboard, cardboard, paper industry and match industry depend on the raw materials which obtained from the forests.
- Trees, plants and herbs in the forests of Pakistan are a source of making valuable (v) medicines for the treatment of many diseases.
- Define Natural Vegetation. Describe two major kinds of Forests. Q.7

Ans: Natural Vegetation

The plants which grow naturally are called Natural Vegetation. Natural Vegetation are generally called in forests. Natural vegetation of a certain area depends upon the climate and the properties of soil. If the rate of rainfall is low then only grass grows there. In Pakistan, Monsoon Vegetation is commonly found.

Kinds of Forests

The forests are generally classified into two major kinds which are following.

(i) Natural Forests

The forests which grow and develop naturally are called Natural Forests. These types of forests are usually found on mountains.

Artificial Forests

The forests which are developed with human efforts are called as Artificial Forests. These forests are established with the help of irrigation.

Q.8	Write	down	the	five	places	of	Bela	For	ests	in	Punjab.
Q.S	**							_		_	_

The Places of Bela Forests in the Province Punjab Ans:

The names of five places of Bela Forests in the province Punjab are following.

- Shaikhupura (i)
- Gujrat (ii)
- Muzaffarabad (iii)

Lahore (iv)

- (v) Ihang
- Name any five trees which are found in the forests of Pakistan. 0.9

The Trees Found in the Forests of Pakistan Ans:

The names of five trees found in the forests of Pakistan are following.

- Chilgoza (i)
- Mulberry (ii)
- Walnut (iii)

- Sheesham (iv)
- (v) Babool
- Q.10 Name five industries dependent on forests in Pakistan.

Ans: The Industries Dependent on Forests

The names of five industries of Pakistan which are dependent on forests are following.

- Paper Industry (i)
- **Furniture Manufacturing Industry** (ii)
- Medicine Industry (iii)
- Sports Goods Industry (iv)
- Match Industry (v)

Q.11 What do you know about Rukh and Bela Forests?

Ans; Rukh and Bela Forests in Pakistan

The forests which are found in the flood plains of the river Indus and its tributaries grow near the river banks are called Bela Forests. These forest are found near the rivers, streams and waterways. The trees found in these forests are acacia, shisham and mulberry. These forests provide timber and firewood in Pakistan. These forests are also known as Riverine Forests. The total area of these forests is about 301 thousand hectre. The area of these forests is decreasing due to construction of canals and dams. In winter the leaves of the trees in these forests fall due to shortage of water.

The forest which have been planted in Pakistan over a limited area where water is available for irrigation but the land is not being used for agriculture are called Irrigated Forests or Rukh Forests. These forests are irrigated through canal water. These forests provide timberwood and firewood. These forest have been planted mostly in the province Punjab and Sindh. Shisham, mulberry, acacia and poplar are common trees which are found in these forests. Changa Manga is the famous Rukh forest which was grown in 1866. Canal irrigated forests or Rukh forests also found in Chicha Watni, Khanewal, Thal, Shorekot, Bahawalpur, Sukkur, Taunsa, Guddu and Kotri.

Q.12 Write down five sentences on Mountainous Forests in Pakistan.

Ans: The Mountainous Forests in Pakistan

A short description of Mountainous Forests in Pakistan is following.

These forests in Pakistan are found in the North and North-Western Mountain area. (i) Sawat, Dir, Chitral, Abbotabad, Murree and Mansehra are included in this area.

These are evergreen coniferous forests because annual rate of rainfall in these areas is (ii) more than 100 centimetres.

The principal coniferous include fir, deodar, blue pine and spruce. (iii)

The trees in these forests are generally grow on a height of 1000 to 4000 metres. (iv)

Below the height of 1000 metres, trees grow like oak, maple, birch, walnut, mulberry (v) apple and other fruit trees. These trees are good source of timber and fruits.

Q.13 Write five sentences on Sub-Mountainous Forests in Pakistan.

Ans: Sub-Mountainous Forests in Pakistan

Five sentences on Sub-Mountainous Forests in Pakistan are following.

(i) Sub-Mountainous Forests in Pakistan are found in Kohat, Mardan, Rawalpindi, Attock, Gujrat and Jhelum districts.

(ir

(v

- Igra Commercial Geography for Class & These forests grow in Pakistan at a height of 1000 metres above the sea-level. (ii) (iii)
- These forests grow in Pakistan at a neight of the Sulaiman Mountains and other hilly (iv)
- areas. The most popular trees grow in these forests are Phulai, Kahu, Jand, Shisham, Poplar and (v)
- blackberry.

 The trees grow in these forests are considered as hardwood trees and used for fire and for
- Q.14 Write five sentences on Dry-Western Mountainous Forests in Pakistan,

Ans: Dry-Western Mountainous Forests in Pakistan

Five sentences on Dry-Western Mountainous Forests in Pakistan are following.

- These forests are found in Pakistan in Quetta, Kohat, Zhob and Ziarat. (ii)
- In these forests only trees and small thorny bushes are found.
- (iii) In these forests trees like Chilghoza, Pine and Juniper grow at high altitude. (iv)
- These forests are not evergreen due to unfavourable climate.
- (v) The trees and small bushes in these forests grow at low height in some areas.
- What do you know about Rukh Forests in Pakistan? Q.15

Ans: Rukh Forests in Pakistan

Dry Tropical Thorn forests which are found in the province Punjab and Sindh are commonly known as Rukh Forests. These forests are naturally grown over almost whole Indus Plain. They also occupy some area of Western Balochistan, Kikar, Ber, Jand, Aak, Palosa and Lasma are common species which are grown in these forests. These trees are hardwood species and the wood of these trees is commonly used as fire.

Q.16 What do you know about Mangroove Coastal Forests in Pakistan?

Mangroove Coastal Forests in Pakistan

These forests are found in Pakistan along the coastal line of Sindh and Balochistan. Pakistan ranks seven according to Mangroove forests in the world. These forests are mainly situated along Karachi Coast, Korangi Creek and Sonmiani Coast of Gawadar. They cover 61.5% area along the coast of Sindh and 38.5% area along the Makran Coast. These forests grow at less height. Timer, Kirani at Kinori are the common species grow in these forests. These forests provide wood for fire, the leaves of trees are used as fooder for sheeps and goats. They also serve as the breeding grounds for fish and prawns.

Q.17 Write down five geographical advantages of the forests in Pakistan.

Ans: The Geographical Advantages of Forests in Pakistan

- The geographical advantages of the forests in Pakistan can be described as following. The forests in Pakistan keep the atmosphere clean, thus they provide help to minimize (i)
- The forests in Pakistan are also helpful in keeping the temperature moderate and thus they (ii) (iii)
- The forests protect both human being and natural vegetation from the onslaught of violent (iv)
- The forests in Pakistan also protect the crops, animals and plants from dust storms and
- (v) The forests in Pakistan help in reducing water logging and salinity and thus they not only increase the fertility of soil but also play a role in preserving the soil.
- Q.18 Write down five social advantages of forests in Pakistan.

Ans: Social Advantages of Forests in Pakistan

Social advantages in Forests in Pakistan can be described as following.

The forests are the source of wild life and number of wild animals like lion, leopard, beat

- (ii) The forests are a source of providing natural pastures. Animals like goats, sheeps and camel get their food from the forests.
- (iii) The forests in Pakistan are the source of the growth and breeding of different kinds of animals and birds.
- (iv) Due to the presence of the forests animal keeping and cattle rearing in Pakistan is done at various places.
- (v) The forests also serve as the tourist places, thus they play a role to provide recreation for many tourists and promote tourism in Pakistan.
- Q.19 Write down five economic and commercial advantages of forests in Pakistan.

Ans: Economic and Commercial Advantages of Forests in Pakistan.

Economic and commercial advantages of forests in Pakistan can be described as following.

- (i) The forests in Pakistan are the source of providing employment to the millions of people in Pakistan.
- (ii) The forests in Pakistan provide dry fruits which not only consumed in Pakistan but also exported to other countries.
- (iii) The forests in Pakistan supply fooder to animals and thus promote cattle rearing.
- (iv) The forests in Pakistan are the source of providing wood and timber. Thus they play a role in promoting wood-based professions.
- (v) The forests in Pakistan also provide raw material for manufacturing medicines.
- Q.20 Write down any five Industrial Advantages of the forests in Pakistan.

Ans: Industrial Advantages of Forests in Pakistan

Industrial advantages of Forests in Pakistan can be described as following.

- (i) The forests in Pakistan provide raw materials to manufacture sports goods. Sports good are manufactured from the wood of malberry and witton trees. Thus they help in organize sports good industry.
- (ii) The forests in Pakistan provide raw materials for the paper industry. They also provide raw materials for clipboard, cardboard, hoodboard and plywood manufacturing industries.
- (iii) The forests in Pakisan also provide raw materials for the industries of manufacturing safety matches and pencils.
- (iv) Chir and deodar wood is obtained from the forests in Pakistan. The wood is used in building the bodies of trucks, buses, coaches, ships, boats and railway tracks.
- (v) The forests in Pakistan provide Shisham, Chir and Walnut wood which is used as timber. Thus forests in Pakistan play a role in the development of furniture making in Pakistan.
- Q.21 Write down the names of trees found in the Mountainous Forests in Pakistan.

Ans: The Trees in the Mountainous Forests of Pakistan

The trees which are found in the Mountainous Forests in Pakistan are following.

- (i) Fir
- (ii) Deodar
- (iii) Blue Pine

- (iv) Spruce
- (v) Oak
- (vi) Maple

- (vii) Birch
- (viii) Walnut
- (ix) Chestnut

- (x) Mulberry
- Q.22 Write down the names of five trees found in the Sub-Mountainous Forests in Pakistan.

Ans: The Trees in Sub-Mountainous Forests in Pakistan

(ii)

The trees found in the Sub-Mountainous Forests in Pakistan are following.

- (i) Pulahi
- Kahu
- (iii) Jand

- (iv) Sisham
- (v) Poplar

Chp.71 Na	tural Vegetation and Irrigation System	72	Iqra Commercial	Geography for Class X
Q.23	Write down the five places Pakistan.	where cana	l irrigated places	are found in
Ans:	The Places of Canal Irriga	ted Forests	in Pakistan	.71
	The places where canal irrigated for	rests in Pakistan	are following.	
	(i) Changa Manga (ii (iv) Bahawalpur (v') Chicha W	atni (iii)	Shorekot
2.24	Write down five causes of cut	,		
ians:	The Causes of Cutting For	ests in Pak	istan	
(i) (ii) (iii)	The causes of cutting forests in Pak Large tracts of forests in Pakistan h The supply of water has been short The construction of new roads for Pakistan.	ave been cleared to the forests w	d to grow agricultural cr with the expansion of agr	iculture.
iv) v)	The forests are being cleared for the The forests are being cleared rapidly	y in order to me	et the demand of wood	in Pakistan
2.25	Suggest five steps to increase	the forests in	n Pakistan.	
Ans:	The Steps for Increasing Following steps can be taken to inc	Forests in P	Pakistan	
i)	Social forestry programmes should about the importance of forests.	be introduced in	n Pakistan, so that peop	
ii)	The village organization should be	formed in order	to provide protection to	the forests.
iii)	New arrigation channels should be	constructed to p	provide water supply for	the forests.
iv) v)	The management of the forests sho	ould be organize	d on scientific basis.	
v)	Nurseries should be established a seeds to people for growing more p	t various places	s in order to provide y	oung plants and
2.26	Write down any five advanta			

Ans: The Advantages of River for Pakistan

The advantages or benefits of rivers for Pakistan are following.

(i) The rivers in Pakistan play a very important role in the irrigation system of Pakistan.

(ii) In Pakistan, the rivers play a role in transportation.

(iii) The rivers in our country is a source of providing many kinds of fresh water fish.

(iv) The rivers in Pakistan provide help in the production of hydroelectricity.

(v) The rivers in Pakistan are the source of providing water in the canals of Pakistan.

Q.27 Write down five advantages of irrigation.

Ans: The Advantages of Irrigation

The advantages of irrigation are following.

(i) Due to irrigation, large scale of agriculture is done and good crops are grown.

(ii) A large area of arid and desert land can be brought under cultivation by means of irrigation.

(iii) The irrigation system supply water for the cultivation of crops throughout a year.

(iv) Irrigation is helpful for the supply of water on the slopes and high areas for cultivation.

(v) Irrigation is helpful in the construction of canals and dams which are the sources of the storage of water.

Q.28 Write down the names of five small dams of Pakistan.

Ans: Small Dams of Pakistan

The names of five small dams of Pakistan are following.

(i) Bolan Dam

(ii) Rawal Dam

(iii) Cheera Dam

Chp. 7; Natural Vegetation and Irrigation System

(iv) Baran Dam

(v) Hub Dam

Q.29 Differentiate between Dam and Barrage.

Ans: Difference b/w Dam and Barrage

A Dam is a kind of a special wall which is build across a river for the purpose of secrage water in order to utilize it for irrigation or generation of electricity. A barrage is a big and the strongest wall which is constructed across a river in order to control the flow of water during floods.

Q.30 Write the names of any five means of irrigation commonly practiced in

Ans: Means of Irrigation Practiced in Pakistan

The names of the Means of Irrigation commonly practiced in Pakistan are following.

- (i) Ponds
- (ii) Small Dams
- (iii) Tube Wells

- (iv) Canals
- (v) Karez
- Q.31 Write the names of the Barrages built on the left bank tributaries of River Indus.

Ans: Barrages Built on the Left Bank Tributaries of River Indus

The names of the barrages constructed on the left bank tributaries of the river indus are following.

- (i) Chashma Barrage
- (ii) Rasooi Barrage
- (iii) Qadir Barrage
- (iv) Sidhnai Barrage
- Q.32 "Canal irrigation system causes loss of water and water lozzing and salinity". Comment.

Ans: Disadvantages of Canal Irrigation System

The most successful source of irrigation in Pakistan is canal irrigation system. This system if not used with care, it becomes harmful for lands for cultivation because a lot of water is wasted. When water is absorbed in the earth, it makes the land swampy on its surface, hence the land becomes useless for the cultivation of crops because a lot of water is dissolved it soil, this problem is called water logging. In canal irrigation system, when water in large quantity is absorbed in the earth and the minerals which are found below the surface of the earth also become dissolved in it and then come to the surface of the water. Water on the surface gets evaporated but the minerals remain on the surface and a layer of them is formed on the land which is called saline which produces salinity and makes the land useless for cultivation.

Q.33 Describe the canal system on the Right or Western Bank of the river Indus.

Ans: The Canal System on the Right or Western Bank of the River Indus

The canal system on the Right Bank or Western Bank of the river Indus can be described as following.

(i) The Sawat canals departing from the river Malakund, they are further divided into upper

Sawat Canal and Lower Savat Canal.

(ii) The Warsak Multipurpose Project at the river Kabul is located at 30 kilometry. North-West of Peshawar. It produces 160,000 KW energy.

(iii) The Kurram Garhi Project on the river Kurram is located in Tehsil Bannu.

Q.34 Write down any five positive aspects of Dams.

Ans: The Positive Aspects or Advantages of Dams

Positive aspects or advantages of Dams are following.

Large Dams are constructed for the storage of water.

- (ii) The stored water in dams is supplied for drinking purpose.
- The stored water in dams is used for the generation of hydroelectricity. (iii)
- The stored water in dams is used for the irrigation of crops. (iv)
- The dams provide safety against excessive flow of water in rivers and floods. (v)

Q.35 Write down the negative aspects of Dams.

Ans: The Negative Aspects of Dam

The dams are constructed for the storage of water especially for community water supplies or irrigation and for the generation of hydroelectricity. The dams have many positive aspects but they have also some negative aspects which can be described as following.

- The dams produce environmental consequences because large dams produce impacts to the biological, chemical and physical properties of rivers. (ii)
- Dams produce a change in the natural flow of rivers.
- Large dams have led to the extinction of many fish and other aquatic species. (iii) (iv)
- The construction of dams also produce the problem of water logging and salinity. In fact basins large dams cause flooding of large tracts of land, destroying local animals and (v)
- Dams restrict sediments that are responsible for the fertile lands downstreams. Farmers use fertilizers and pesticides to compensate for the loss of productivity.
- Q.36 What do you know about Indus Basin Treaty? Write five sentences on Indus Basin Treaty.

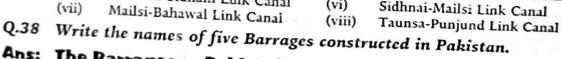
Ans: Indus Basin Treaty

- A brief description of Indus Basin Treaty is following.
- (i) In September, 1960 the water dispute between India and Pakistan had been solved it on permanent basis by an agreement with co-operation of International Bank which is known as Indus Basin Treaty.
- According to this agreement, India got exclusive rights and powers to use the water of three Eastern river Sutlej Bias and Ravi and it was settled that those canals irrigated Pakistan in which water was provided by India. (iii)
- Pakistan got exclusive rights of three western rivers namely Indus, Jhelum and Chenab. (iv)
- Pakistan received water through link canals into the canals coming out of the rivers, Sutlej
- According to this agreement, Pakistan would construct two storage dams, five barrages (v) and eight link canals to meet shortage of water due to loss of three Eastern rivers which went to India. Thus a well-established canal irrigation system constructed in Pakistan.
- Q.37 Write the names of Link Canals which have been constructed in Pakistan.

Ans: The Link Canals in Pakistan

The Link canals which have been constructed in Pakistan according to Indus Basin Treaty are following. (i)

- Rasul-Qadirabad Link Canal
- (ii) Qadirabad-Baloki Link Canal
- Baloki-Sulaimanki Link Canal (iii) (v)
- Chashma-Jhelum Link Canal (iv) (vi)
- Trimmu-Sidhani Link Canal (vii)
- Sidhnai-Mailsi Link Canal (viii)



Ans: The Barrages in Pakistan

The Barrages constructed in Pakistan are following.

- (i) Chashma Barrage (iv) Qadirabad Barrage
- (ii) Rasul Barrage (v) Malisi Barrage
 - (iii) Maraloi Barrage

- Q.39 Write the names of three Dams and the rivers on which they are constructed.
- Ans: The Dams in Pakistan

The names of three dams along with the river on which they are constructed are following.

(i) Mangla Dam

It has been constructed on the river Jhelum near Mirpur in Azad Jammu and Kashmir.

(II) Tarbela Dam

It has been constructed on the River Indus, 50 kilometres away from Attock.

(iii) Warsak Dam

It has been constructed on the River Kabul twenty miles away from Peshawar.

- Q.40 Describe the types of canals in the canal system of Pakistan.
- Ans: The Types of Canals in the Canal System of Pakistan

Pakistan has the largest canal sysem in the world. According to the flow of water, the following types of canal are included in the canal system of Pakistan.

(i) Inudation Canals

The canals which flow only during rainy season when the rivers from which they flow rise due to heavy rains are called Inudation Canals. These are seasonal canals and they supply water only in summer when the donor rivers are in floods. These canals are found in Rajanpur, Dera Ghazi Khan and in Muzaffarabad districts.

(ii) Perennial Canals

The canals which are constructed after making dams on river and flow throughout the year are called Perennial canals. Most of the canals in Pakistan are Perennial Canals. They are useful both for Rabi and Kharif crops. Perennial canals need dams and barrages for the storage of water. These canals are found in Sindh and Punjab. In some areas of Khyber Pakhtun Khwa perennial canals have been constructed.

(iii) Non-Perennial Canals

The canals which are filled with water only during summer season at the time of rainfall are called Non-Perennial canals. When the rivers are fed with heavy rains and melting ice and glaciers on the Northern Mountains. These canals run until the water remains in the rivers. They close down in winter when there is not enough water in the rivers. Headworks have been constructed on the opening of these canals.

(iv) Link Canals

Such auxiliary canals which carry water from other rivers when water is decreased in any canal of river of the irrigation system are called Link Canals. These canals are the main water carriers from the Western rivers to the Eastern rivers and from the rivers into canals. The River Ravi and the River Sutlej are such rivers which come from the areas in India, therefore the quantity of water is decreased in these rivers. Link Canals have been constructed to control the shortage of water in these rivers.

Q.41 Write any five Hydel Power Projects of Pakistan.

Ans: The Hydel Power Projects in Pakistan

The names of five Hydel Power Projects of Pakistan are following.

- (i) Tarbela Hydel Project
- (ii) Mangla Hydel Project
- (iii) Ghazi Brotha Hydel Project (iv) Warsak Hydel Project
 (v) Chashma Hydel Project
- Q.42 Why are water logging and salinity in Pakistan? Describe five causts of it.

 Ans: The Causes of Water-logging and Salinity in Pakistan

Water logging and salinity are increasing in Pakistan. The causes of increasing water



logging and salinity can be described as following.

- Water logging and salinity is produced due to the increase of water table of underground water because of the presence of rivers and canals in the country.
- Excessive irrigation through canal irrigated system also causes to produce water logging (ii) and salinity in Pakistan.
- Water logging and salinity is increasing in Pakistan because of the defective system of the (iii) drainage of underground water.
- Water logging and salinity is also increasing in Pakistan because of less availability of (iv) water in some areas.
- The presence of large amount of salts in the composition of cultivated land in some areas (v) of Pakistan is also a cause of increasing water logging and salinity.
- What is water logging and salinity? Write the harmful effects of water Q.43 logging and salinity in Pakistan.

Ans: Water Logging and Salinity

If the underground water table is raised to the upper surface of the Earth, then it is called Water Logging. As compared to this if some salts come at the surface of the land with underground water and then stuck on the surface in the form of a layer then it is called Salinity.

The Harmful Effects of Water Logging and Salinity

The harmful effects of water logging and salinity can be described as following.

- (i) When the underground water table is raised upto 1.5 metres then this type of land is called waterlogged land. The underground water covers the surface of land, so cultivation on this type of land cannot be done.
- (ii) Due to waterlogging, the people have to migrate from the area of waterlogged lands. All the works for the progress are also destroyed in such areas.
- (iii) In the Arid and Semi-arid areas of Pakistan, when underground water reached at the surface, it gets evaporated while the salts dissolved in it cover the surface in form of a layer, thus produce salinity. The salinity removes the fertile particles of the upper crust of land.
- Almost 1.2 metric tonnes salts reach to one hectre area of cultivated land every year (iv) through cannal irrigation and spread salinity there, so the land becomes ineffective for cultivation.
- In the canal irrigated cultivated areas of Pakistan almost 30% area has been defected (v) through water logging. Similarly 8% areas has been defected by salinity.
- Q.44 Name any five Multipurpose Projects in Pakistan.

Ans: The Multipurpose Projects in Pakistan

The names of five Multipurpose Projects in Pakistan are following.

- Tarbella Hydel Project (i)
- (ii) Mangla Hydel Project
- (iii) Ghazi Brotha Hydel Project
- (iv) Chashma Hydel Project
- Warsak Hydel Project (v)
- Q.45 Write the names of the Barrages constructed on the River Indus.

Ans: The Barrages Constructed on River Indus

The names of the barrages constructed on the River Indus are following.

- Jinnah Barrage (ii) (i)
- Taunsa Barrage (iii) Guddu Barrage
- Kotri Barrage or Ghulam Muhammad Barrage Sukkur Barrage (v) (iv)
- Q.46 Write the names of the Western Dams constructed in Pakistan on other rivers than River Ravi.

Ans: The Western Dams in Pakistan

The names of Western Dams constructed in Pakistan on other rivers than the river Ravi are following.



	(i) Warsak Dam (ii) Tanda Dam (iii)
	(iv) Mari Balance I and Dam (iii) Karramaarki fiam
	(VIII) Danuar Danie (VIII) Barari Danie
Q.47	Write the names of the sand
•	Write the names of the canals of the River Ravi, River Chenab and the River Jhelum.
Ansili	The Canals of River Ravi
	The names of the canals of the River Ravi are following. (i) Upper Bari Doah
(**1	Pro Date Doal (iii) Louise Desi Part
(ii)	The Canal of River Chanab
	The names of the canals of the River Chenab are following. (i) Upper Chenab Canal (ii)
	Pres Girchau Canal (II) Guer Chench Conel
[:::1	Of a surrer
<u>(iii)</u>	The Canals of River Jhelum
	The names of the canals of River Jhelum are following. (i) Upper Jhelum Canal (ii) Jersey Hall Const.
0.40	(II) Lower Inclum Canal
Q.48	Write down the names of the canals of the River Sutlej.
Ans:	The Canals of the River Sutlej
	The name of the Canals of the River Sutlej are following.
	(1) Depaipur Canal; Headworks: Ganda Singhwal
	(ii) Fordwah, East Sadiqia and Pakpattan Canals; Headworks : Sulaimanki
	(iii) Bahawal, Qaim Pur and Mailsi Canals; Headworks; Islam (iv) Abbasia and Panjund Canal; Headworks; Punjund
Q.49	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
Q.45	Write down the names of the canal irrigation projects of the Potwar
	Plateau Region.
Ans	Canal Irrigation Projects of Potwar Plateau
	The names of the Canal Irrigation Projects of Potwar Plateau are following.
	(i) The Project of Rawal Dam (ii) The Project Rawalpindi Dam (iii) The Project of Cheera Dam
0.50	
Q.50	Tournel Bellen B
Ans:	The Canals of the River Indus
	The names of the canals of the River Indus are following.
	(i) Upper Thal Canal, South Thal Canal ; Headworks, Jinnah Barrage
	(ii) Chashma Trimmus Link Canal and Right Bank Canal ; Head works: Chashma Barrage
	(iii) Right and Left Bank Canal and Taunsa-Panjund Canal
	; Headworks : Taunsa Barrage
	(iv) Ghotki, Begari and Pat feder Canal; Head works; Guddu Barrage
	(v) Rohri Canal, Nara Canal, East Khairpur Canal, West Khairpur Canal, Rice Canal,
	Dadu Canal ; Head works : Sukkur Barrage
	(vi) Kotri Canal, Phuleli Canal, Panyari Canal and Kalri Canal ; Head works; Kotri Barrage
Q.51	III 22 22 2
Q.51	Khwa.
_	[- 프레마 1988] : [14] - [14] - [14] - [15] - [15] - [15] - [15] - [16] - [16] - [16] - [16] - [16] -
Ans	
(11)	There are following canals in the canal irrigation system of Pakistan.
<i>(1)</i>	Punjab Canals
* <	In the province Punjab, Upper Bari Doab and Lower Bari Doab are two important canals o

Chp.7: Natural Vegetation and Irrigation System

the river Ravi. Upper Bari Doab is an old canal and it was opened in 1859. It originates from Madhupur headworks. It supplies water to Lahore, Depalpur and Kasur regions. Lower Doab originates from Baloki headworks and it irrigates Sahiwal, Pakpattan and Multan regions. Sidhnai canal originates from Sidhnai headworks and irrigates Multan, Vehari and Khanewal regions.

Upper Chenab and Lower Chenab are two important canals of the river Chenab. Upper Chenab originates from Marala headworks and it irrigates Sialkot, Narowal, Gujranwala and Shaikhupura regions. Lower Chenab originates from Khanki headworks and it irrigates Gujranwala, Shaikhupura and Faisalabad regions. Two canals are come out at two places from the river Jhelum. Upper Jhelum originates from Mangla Dam and it irrigates Gujrat and Mandi Bahauddin regions. Lower Jhelum canal originates from Rasul headworks and it irrigates Gujrat, Mandi Bahauddin, Sargodha and Khushab regions.

(ii) Sindh Canals

In the province Sindh two canals have been taken out from Jinnah Barrage which are Upper Thal and South Thal. They irrigate Mianwali, Sukkur, Khushab and Muzafargarh. Chashma-Trimmu canal has been taken out from Chashma Barrage which irrigates Muzaffargarh and Dera Ismail Khan. Two canals have been taken out from Taunsa Barrage which irrigate Dera Ghazi Khan, Rajanpur and Muzaffargarh. Ghotki, Begari and Pat feeder are three canals have been taken out from Guddu Barrage. They irrigate Sukkur, Jaccobabad, Mir Purkhas'and Larkana regions. Seven canals have been taken out from Sukkur Barrage. They irrigate Kalat division, Sukkur, Larkana, Dadu and Nawab Shah regions. Four canals have been taken out from Kotri Barrage. They irrigate Hyderabad, Sanghar, Nawab Shah, Badin, Mirpur Khas and Thatta regions.

(iii) Khyber Pakhtun Khwa Canals

Before independence two canals were taken out from the river sawat which are known as Upper sawat and Lower sawat. After independence two more canals were taken out from Warsak Project. These canals irrigate approximately one million twenty thousand acres of land. Seven more canals have been constructed on river Kurram and Baran, these canals irrigate Bannu districts.

Q.52 Suggest five steps to control water logging and salinity.

Ans: Suggestions to Control Water Logging and Salinity

Following steps can be taken to control water logging and salinity.

- (i) The installation of tube-wells in large number is a source to control water logging and salinity.
- (ii) Such trees should be planted in the areas affected by water logging and salinity which absorb water and evaporate it in the atmosphere.

 (iii) Pumping of excess ground water should be done on large coals the coal.
- (iii) Pumping of excess ground water should be done on large scale through machines.
 (iv) The use of gypsum should be done on large scale to control water logging and salinity.
- (v) The construction lining canals should be done in order to pump out under ground water from the affected area.

IMPORTANT DETAILED TYPE QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q.1 Describe the advantages and importance of Forests in Pakistan in detail.

Ans: The Advantages and Importance of Forests

The advantages and importance of forests in Pakistan can be described as following.

(i) A Source of Beauty

In Pakistan, the forests play a role to add beauty in the different regions of Pakistan. They attract tourists, so tourism is promoted in Pakistan because of the presence of forests.

(ii) Role in the Atmosphere

The forests in Pakistan play their role in atmosphere. They keep the temperature of the atmosphere moderate and also help in bringing monsoon rainfall in Pakistan. They also protect the vegetation, animals and human beings from the destruction of windstorms. They also help to



minimize water logging and salinity, thus indirectly make the soil fertile for agriculture.

A Source of Employment (iii)

In Pakistan, forests are the source of employment for many people in Pakistan.. People obtain wood, herbs and shurbs and other material from the forests.

A Source of Natural Habitat (iv)

In Pakistan, the forests provide natural habitat for the growth of many species of animals, birds and plants. These species play their role in the ecosystem of Pakistan.

Provision of Raw Material to Industries

The forests in Pakistan provide raw material for many industries. Some industries in Pakistan are working on the basis of raw material obtained from the forests. Paper industry, Rubber and cork industry, plywood, hardboard and furniture manufacturing industries.

Provision of Food (vi)

The forests in Pakistan is also a source of providing food. These forests act as natural pastures and many animals get their food from them. Cattle rearing in Pakistan in some regions depends upon the forests. Some plants of the forests are used as food while some are used as medicine. Ornamental plants are also obtained from the forests.

Write in detail about the various kinds of forests in Pakistan. Q.2

Ans: Kinds of Forests in Pakistan

The climate of Pakistan is different at different places, therefore many kinds of forests are a Pakistan. The kinds of forests can be described as following. found in Pakistan. The kinds of forests can be described as following.

Mountainous Forests (1)

The forests which are found in the North-Eastern and North-Western mountainous regions are called Mountainous Forests. The height of these forests about 1500 metres to 4000 metres. These forests are found in the areas of Sawat, Chitral, Abbotabad, Murree and Mansehra. These are evergreen, coniferous soft wood forests. Trees like oak, maple, brich, walnut, mulberry, apple and fruit trees are found in these forests. These forests are good source of providing timber and fruits. Mountainous forests are further divided into following groups.

Sub-Tropical Chir Forests

These forests are found in Abbotabad, Dadar, Mansehra, Ghoragali and Valley of Kashmir Chir is the famous species of these forests.

Himalayan Moist Temperate Forests

These forests are found in Kashmir, Murree, Hazra, sawat, Lower Dir, Kurram Agency, Uppet sawat, Upper Dir, Gilgit and Baltistan. In these forests broad leaves trees are found. Kail, Deodar, Spruce and Junipar are famous species found in these forests. These forests are found at the height of 1200 to 3030 metres.

(iii) Dry-Temperate Forests

These forests are found in Chitral, Neelum Valley, Sulaiman Mountain Range, Hindukush Mountain Range and the Valley of Kaghan. The average height of these forests is 5000 to 11,000 metres.

(iv) Sub-Alpine Forests

These forests are found in the valley of Kaghan, sawat, Baltistan, Gilgit, Chitral, Dir and the mountain slopes of the Koh-i-Safed Range. Bush type trees are commonly grow. The wood obtained from the trees is used as fuel.



(v) Alpine Scrub Forests

These forests are found in the Northern areas of Pakistan. These forests are located in Gilgit, Baltistan, Dir, sawat and the Valley of Kaghan in the areas having a height more than 4000 meres. Grasses and bush type trees are grown in these forests.

(2) Sub-Mountainous Forests

These forests grow in Pakistan at a height of 1000 metres above the sea level. These

tı

L

n

n

I

e

u

V

iı

h P

(

a

0

(

ti s

forests are found in the areas of Kohat, Mardan, Rawalpindi, Attock, Gujrat and Jhelum. Phuleli, Kahu, Jand, Shisham, Poplar and blackberry are common trees found in these forests. The wood obtained from these trees is used as timber and also used as fuel.

(3) Dry Western Mountainous Forests

These forests are found in Quetta, Kalat Division, Zhob and Ziarat. These forests are found at the average height of 3000 to 10,000 feet. Due to short rainfall, these forests are not so dense and thick. The rainfall is common during winter, therefore the trees grown in these forests are not so tall. Chilghoza, Pine, Juniper, Walnut, Chanar, Sumbal and mulberry are common trees grow in these forests. The grass commonly grow on the patches among trees which is used as food for cattle.

(4) Cold Desert Mountainous Forests

In the Northern part of Pakistan, where the highest mountains K-2, Nanga Parbat, Raka Poshi and Tirch Mir are located, these forests are grow there. In these forests the plants grow which is known as cold desert Xerophytic vegetation. Many kinds of herbs and shrubs grow in these forests.

(5) Dry Tropical Thorn Forests

These forests are found in the province Punjab and Sindh. These forests are commonly known as "Rukh Forests" in Punjab and as "Desert Forests" in Sindh. Thorny hardwood shrub like trees grow in these forests. These vegetation are also found in Western Balochistan, Southern Balochistan and Coastal areas. The average height of trees found in these forests is about 20 to 33 feet. Kikar, Ber, Frash, Aak, Palosa, Jand, Malla and Lasura are the common species which are found in these fresh.

(6) Riverine or Bella Forests

In the plain areas of Pakistan where annual rate of rainfall is 20 to 30 inches, these forests grow. These forests usually found near rivers, streams and water ways therefore they are known as Plain Forests or Bella Forests. Sisham, acasia and mulberry are common trees found in these forests. In winter the leaves of these trees found in these forests. In winter the leaves of these trees fall. These forests provide wood for construction purposes and for fuel needs.

(7) Canal Irrigated Forests

These are artificial forests in Pakistan and have been planted where canal water is available in abundance but the land is not used for agriculture purposes. These forests are also sometimes called as 'Rukh Forests'. These forests are usually grow over a limited area because water supply is needed for their growth. Canal irrigated forests have been grown in Punjab and Sindh. The total area of canal irrigated forests in Pakistan is 262000 hectares. Canal irrigated forests in Pakistan have been planted in the areas of Changa Manga, Thal, Taunsa, Kotri, Guddu, Shorekot, Bahawalpur, Chicha Watni, Borewala and Khanewal. Shisham, mulberry, eucalyptus, Sunbal, Spruce, Poplar and Kikar are common trees grow in these forests.

(8) Coastal Forests or Mangrove Forests

These forests are located in the coastal areas of Pakistan along with the coastal line of Sindh Coast and the Makran Coast. 97% of these forests is located in Sindh while only 3% located in Balochistan. These forests covers an area of 628,350 acres in Pakistan. They are located along Karachi Coast, Korangi Kreck, Sonmiani and along the Coast of Gawadar. These are generally known as Mangroove Forests.

These forests are everreen, the trees found in these forests have short height. These forests contain a unique ecosystem. These forests in Pakistan serve as the breeding grounds for fish and prawns. These forests have valuable ecological importance for Pakistan. They keep the climate moderate in Sindh and protect the shore of Sindh Coast. Wood is obtained from these forests which is commonly used as fuel. Pakistan has the largest Mangrove Forests. Coconut trees, grass, timer, kirani and kinori are commonly grow in these forests.

Describe the Means of Irrigation which are commonly practiced Q.3Pakistan.

The Means of Irrigation in Pakistan

The system of irrigation has been extended to various parts of Pakistan due to natural facilities available for irrigation in Pakistan. The canal system in Pakistan is the biggest canal system in the world. A large area of the Upper Indus Plain and the Lower Indus Plain is irrigated by means of canals and tube-wells. The canal system in Pakistan depends upon the river Indus and its tributaries. The means of irrigation have been developed after independence. The Means of Irrigation which are commonly practiced in Pakistan can be described as following.

(1) Wells

The method of irrigation with the help of wells is being done from ancient times. This method is used in semi-mountainous regions and mountainous valleys where the water canals are not available. It is a cheap method for irrigation but large area cannot be irrigated from wells. Dera Ismail Khan, Dera Ghazi Khan, Rawalpindi, Attock, Jhelum, Chackwal, Gujrat, Sialkot are the areas where wells are used for irrigaion.

(2)Tube-Wells

Tube-wells are started to use in Pakistan instead of wells after the availability of electricity. In those areas where the facility of electricity is not available, tube-wells are operated with the help of diesel engines. Tube-wells help to stop water logging because they pump out underground water and stop it to raise at the surface level. In 1960, tube-wells were installed at various places in order to control water logging and salinity. Tubewells are mostly used for irrigation in the Punjab. In Pakistan more than 8,95,511 tube-wells are working, 2.88 million hectare area in Punjab, 0.41 million hectare area in Sindh, 0.06 million hectare area in Khyber Pakhtun Khwa and 0.47 area in Balochistan is irrigated with the help of tube-wells.

(3) Karez

In this method of irrigation water is transported to the fields with the help tunnels under the surface of the Earth. Underground tunnels are constructed from the source to the fields in this system of irrigation. This method of irrigation is practiced in many parts of Balochistan from ancient times. In the valleys of Mastung, Makran, Quetta and Pashin, Karez is an important source of irrigation. 15% of the total area of cultivation is irrigated through Karez in Balochistan.

(4)Ponds

The water of small streams and ponds is also used for irrigation in Pakistan. These ponds collect rain water which is then used for irrigation. This method is used for irrigation in the Northern Mountainous areas like Chitral, Gilgit, Hunza, Skurdu, Kaghan Valley and Baltistan. Iu this system small canals are dug which receive water from ponds and supply it to the fields. These small canals have to make clean from time to time which is actually a hard job.

(5) **Small Dams**

Small Dams have been built at various places in Pakistan. These small dams collect water and then this water is supplied to fields for irrigation. Some small dams which are used for irrigation purpose in Pakistan are following.

. (i) Bolan Dam (ii) Rawal Dam (iii) Cheera Dam

Baran Dam (iv)

Hub Dam (v)

Persian Wheel

A system which is used to pull underground water especially from the wells is called Persian Wheel System. In this system many buckets are attaches to a mechanical set of pulley. This system is operated by a bull. When the wheel revolves, the water is filled in the buckets which then taken out from them into a small canal and then it is supplied to the fields. This system is used very limited in the areas of Attock, Rawalpindi, Chackwal, Khushab and Valley of Son.

(7) Kole

This method of irrigation is used in the North and North-Eastern Mountainous areas. In



this system water which is obtained from the streams and glaciers collected in artificial canals which are constructed from the source to the fields. The artificial canals supply water to the fields. This method of irrigation is used in the areas like Sawat, Dir, Chitral, Gilgit and Azad Kashmir. The regular maintenance of the artificial canals which are known as Kole is necessary because these canals are soon filled with silt and the cleaning of these is a hard job.

Canals

During early year water of the rivers mostly flown towards the sea and it is not used for irrigation but afterwards many dams constructed on the rivers then canals taken out from them, so canals are now a big source of irrigation in Pakistan. Pakistan has the best canal system in the world. 81.4% of the cultivated area in Pakistan is irrigated with the help of canals. The total length of the canals in Pakistan is almost 42,000 miles. The process of the extension of the canals is also

The canals which are included in the canal irrigation system in Pakistan can be divided into following groups.

Perrenial Canals

The canals which are constructed after making dams and barrages on rivers are called Perrenial Canals. Most of the canals in Pakistan are Perrenial Canals. In such canals water continously flows throughout a year. Some Perennial canals also carry water from one river to another, such type of perennial canals are known as Link Canals.

(ii) Non-Perrenial Canals

The canals which are filled with water only during summer season are called Non-Perrenial Canals. When the rivers are fed by heavy rains and melting of ice and glaciers on the Northern-Mountains, these canals are filled with water. These canals run until the water remains in the rivers. They close down during winter season when there is not enough water in the rivers. Headworks have been constructed on the openings of these canals.

Inudation Canals

The canals which flow only during rainy season when the river from which they flow and start to rise due to heavy rains are called as Inudation Canals. These are seasonal canals and they supply water only in summer when their donor rivers are in floods. These canals are found in Rajanpur, Dera Ghazi Khan and Muzzaffarabad districts.

Discuss the problems faced by the canal irrigation system in Pakistan.

Ans: The Problems of Canal Irrigation in Pakistan

Pakistan is an agricultural country therefore different methods are used to increase the agricultural products in Pakistan. The most successful source of irrigation in Pakistan is the Canal Irrigation System. But if the canal irrigation system is not used with care, it becomes harmful for the lands of cultivation. A lot of water which is supplied for irrigation through canals gets absorbed into the land. When the water is absorbed in large quantity, it makes the land swampy on its surface, hence water stays on the surface thus cultivation cannot be done. Some dissolved salts in water also come to the surface with underground water when water gets evaporated, these salts. from a layer on the surface of the land. Hence the problems of the canal irrigation system in Pakistan can be described as following.

The Problem of Water Logging (i)

In the canal irrigation system, water is supplied continously in large quantity through canals. This water is in large quantity therefore, some of its amount starts to absorb slowly into lands of cultivation. This water increases the level of underground water. After the absorption in large quantity, it raises the level of underground water and underground water reaches at the surface of the land and spread over it, thus water stays on the surface which makes difficult the process of cultivation. This problem is known as water logging. Due to water logging the area of cultivation gets affected when the underground water level is increased upto 1.5 metres then, the problem of water logging is produced. Due to the construction of Link Canals and dams, the natural flow of water on the surface is hindred, therefore this water gets absorbed into the land and

produces the problem of water logging. About 30% area of the canal irrigated lands in Pakistan has been affected through water logging.

The Problem of Salinity (ii)

In canal irrigation system, the canal supply water to the cultivated lands continously, this water is in large quantity, therefore it gets absorbed under the surface of the land. This water gets mixed with the underground water and dissolves many salts which are found under the surface of the earth. When the level of underground water rises and it reaches upto the surface, the salts dissolved in it also come at the surface. After the evaporation of this water, the dissolved salt stuck on the surface in the form of a layer saline and thus produces the problem of salinity. These layer of salts cover the surface of the land and reduces the ability of fertility, therefore cultivation cannot be done on such lands. The problem of salinity usually occurred in arid and semi-arid regions. The river Indus and its triutaries bring 33 million tonnes of salt with their flow and then spread these salts over an area of 18 million hectares which is irrigated through the canals taken from them. 1.2 matric tonnes of these salts are responsible to spread salinity in canal irrigated areas every year. About 14% of the canal irrigated lands in Pakistan have been affected through salinity.

The Steps Taken by the Government to Control Water Logging and Salinity

The Government of Pakistan has taken many steps to control water logging and salinity in Pakistan. A programme was started in 1960 to control water logging and salinity in Pakistan. According to this programme tube-wells were installed at various regions in order to control the level of underground water. WAPDA in Pakistan has also completed its forty projects in order to control water logging and salinity in Pakistan. The steps taken by the government of Pakistan in order to control water logging and salinity can be described as following.

- Kallar Grass has been planted over water logged bonds in order to restore the fertility of (i) these lands.
- Surface drainage system of canal has been established in many areas in order to control the (ii) level of underground water.
- The canals in Pakistan has been reconstructed with cement. Water Management (iii) Department also manages to remove silt from the canals every year.
- Tube-wells have been installed at various places in large number in order to control water (iv) logging and salinity. These tube-wells have been installed on both public and private levels.
- Water-logging tolerant trees have been planted in many areas which have been affected (v) through water logging.
- (vi) The use of gypsum has been made common in the areas affected through water logging and salinity. The use of organic matter and acids are also being used in order to control water logging and salinity.
- Agricultural and industrial wastes are also being used in order to increase the fertility of (vii) soil in those areas which have been affected by water logging and salinity.
- In some areas, the farmers have been trained to scrap out the salts from the surface of (viii) lands affected by salinity. By the use of this physical activity and deep ploughing, the fertility of lands have been restored.

IMPORTANT MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS - MCQs

Choose the correct answer for each of the following from the given options:

- A very deepland is dug for irrigation in the semi-mountainous areas: (1)
 - Canals (b) Wells (c) Drains
 - (d) Gutters (Main House)
- (2) The problem of scarcing of water is solved by the construction of:
 - (a) Bridges
- (b) Walls
- (c) Dams
- (d) None of these

	(3)	The supply water at the time of cultivation of crops is called:
		(a) Harvesting (b) Irrigation (c) Seeding (d) None of
	(4)	The things which are obtained from the forests for medicine industries are:
		(a) Herbs (b) Paper Pulp (c) Firewood (d) None of these
	(5)	The Barrage on the river Indus near Dera Ghazi Khan is:
		(a) Sukkur Barrage (b) <u>Taunsa Barrage</u> (c) Jinnah Barrage (d) None of these
	(6)	The largest Barrage in Pakistan is:
		(a) Chashma Barrage (b) Sukkur Barrage
		(c) Jinnah Barrage (d) Taunsa Barrage
	(7)	Forests control pollution by supplying:
		(a) Dirty air (b) Dense air (c) Clear air (d) Wet air
	(8)	For our agriculture, water logging and salinity is:
	(9)	The wood pulp is used in making: (c) A boom (d) None of these
		(a) Cloth (b) <u>Paper</u> (c) Leather (d) House
	(10)	
		(a) March Day (b) Day (b) Day
	(11)	Water logging and salinity can be controlled by: (c) Hub Dam (d) <u>Tarbella Dam</u>
		(a) Clarent (b) Million (c)
	(12)	Sukkur Barrage is built on this river: (c) Forests (d) Water
		(a) Ihelum (b) Chenab
	(13)	Indus Basin Treaty was settled between Pakistan and India in the year A.D.;
	, ,	
	(14)	The Indus Basin Treaty between Pakistan and India was settled by the efforts of:
	. ,	(a) America (b) UNICEF (c) World Bank (d) Security Council
	(15)	(a) America (b) UNICEF (c) World Bank (d) Security Council Chashma Barrage has been constructed on this river:
	(16)	Rasul Barrage has been constructed on this river:
	1	
	(17)	Qadirabad Barrage has been constructed on this river:
	(18)	(a) Kunar (b) Kabul (c) <u>Chenab</u> (d) Ravi This barrage has been constructed on the river Ravi:
	` '	(a) Sukkur Barrage (b) Chashma Barrage (c) Guddu Barrage (d) Sidhnai Barrage
	(19)	In this type of canals water flows throughout a year:
		(a) Perennial Canals (b) Non-Perennial Canals
		(c) Inudation Canals (d) Link Canals
	(20)	The total percent area of the forests in Pakistan is:
		(a) 4.3% (b) 4.5% (c) 5.2% (d) 6.1%
	(21)	Warsak Dam has been constructed on this river:
	. ,	/ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \
	(22)	(a) Indus (b) <u>Kabul</u> (c) Chenab (d) Jhelum Mangla Dam has been constructed on this river:
	,,	(a) Chenab (b) Ravi (c) Sindh (d) Ihelum
	(23)	Tarbela Dam has been constructed on this river:
	(20)	
	(24)	(a) Kabul (b) <u>Indus</u> (c) Jhelum (d) Ravi The percent area under forests in the Punjab is:
	~ .)	(a) 2.7% (b) 3.7% (c) 4.7% (d) 5.7%
	(25)	The total percent area under forests in Sindh is:
•	(23)	
,	26)	(a) 3.14% (b) 4.24% (c) 5.6% (d) 8.2% The total percent area under forests in Khyber Pakhtun Khwa is:
((26)	
,	271	(a) <u>15.6%</u> (b) 15.9% (c) 15.1% (d) 14.9%
(27)	The total percent area under forests in Balochistan is:
		(a) 2.1% (b) 2.7% (c) 3.4% (d) 4.5%

71 Natu	I Veceta	tion and Irrigat	ion Sy	stem .	85	Igra	Comn	ercial Geogr	יין קייוקיי		
	These fo	rests genera	ılly gı	row in Pakista	an at the he	ight of 1000 to					
	These 10	ountain For	, 0		(b)	Sub-Mountai	nous	Forests			
((4)	verine Fore	sts		, ,	Canal Forest					
((c) Ki	rests of Pa	kista	n are found	in Kohat. I	Mardan, Rawal	pind	i. Attock	Gujrat a	nd	
7	I nese 10	listricts:		are round	m Romat, 1	mardan, xan	Pina	.,	,		
-		pastal Fores	ts		(b)	Riverine Fore	ata				
100	-	ountain For			(b)	The state of the s		Forests			
(are common!		Bela Forests:	110118	10,000			
		ountain For	acte	(b) Dry For	y Kilowii as	Riverine Fore	ete	(d) Ca	nal Forest	s	
(nsa and Guddu					
		pine Forest		anga, Cincha		Thorny Fores		CHOWN AS	1		
		inal Irrigate		wasta	(b)			, ,		11h -	
					· (d)	Coastal Fores	15		AN	~	
				are evergreer				Poracte	7/		
	: =	ountain For				Sub-Mountain			- 1		
	-/	pastal Forest				Dry-Western					
				kistan are ger		vn as Mangrove		ests:			
- 1	•	ountain For			(b)				*		
•	•	la Forests			(d)	Coastal Fores	sts				
				constructed o			(1)	77			
7.00	a) Ra			Chenab	(c)	Kabul	(d)	Indus			
Ji				onstructed or	this river:						
(a		bul		sawat		(c) <u>Indus</u>	OL.	(d) Ra	71		
W	Varsak, N	Multipurpos	e Pro	ject has been	constructed	l on this river:	- 7		70.0	í .	
(a		ıbul		sawat		(c) Chenab		(d) Jhe	lum -		
K	urrum (Garhi Projec	t has	been constru							
(a) Jhe	elum and Ch	ienab	K I-	(b)	Ravi and Sutl	ej	# - THE		TO 10	
· (c		rram and B	Baran		(d)	Jhelum and sa	wat	Dec . 9	008.7	. 1111	
		argest Dam	in Pa	kistan:					687		
				Tarbela Dan		74 1 75 1 75	m (d)	Warsak	Dam	6.1	
(a	l) IVIa	ngia Dam		- W. OUW D W.	(C)	Kala Bagh Da	ш (ч)	A A COLL DESCRIPTION			
(a Tl						Kala Bagh Da is:	(u,	W tar State		т.	
TI	he oldes	t Barrage co	onstru	ucted on the r	iver Indus	is:	(0)	COM.	isa Barrag	7 I	
TI (a	he oldes) Gu	t Barrage co ddu Barrage	onstru e(b)	icted on the i Sukkur Barr	river Indus : age (c)	is: Chashma Barr	(0)	COM.	nsa Barrag		
TI (a G	he oldes i) Gu uddu Ba	t Barrage co ddu Barrage rrage has b	onstru e(b) een c	ucted on the 1 Sukkur Barr onstructed or	river Indus : age (c)	is: Chashma Bari	(0)	d) Taur			
TI (a Gi	he oldes i) Gu uddu Ba i) <u>Ind</u>	t Barrage co ddu Barrage trage has be lus	onstrue(b) een co (b)	ucted on the r Sukkur Barr onstructed on sawat	river Indus : age (c) 1 this river:	is: Chashma Barr	(0)	COM.			
TI (a Gi (a Ko	he oldes a) Gu uddu Ba a) <u>Ind</u> otri Barr	t Barrage co ddu Barrage trage has be <u>lus</u> rage is situa	e(b) een co (b) ted in	ucted on the r <u>Sukkur Barr</u> onstructed on sawat n Pakistan ne	river Indus : age (c) this river: ar:	is: Chashma Barı (c) Kabul	age (d) Taur (d) Rav			
TI (a Gi (a Ko	he oldes a) Gu- uddu Ba a) <u>Ind</u> otri Barr a) Mir	t Barrage co ddu Barrage rrage has be lus rage is situa r Pur Khas	e(b) een c (b) ted in (b)	ucted on the r <u>Sukkur Barr</u> onstructed on sawat n Pakistan ne <u>Hyderabad</u>	river Indus : age (c) 1 this river:	is: Chashma Bari	age (d) Taur		ė	
TI (a Gi (a Ko (a Al	he oldes) Gu uddu Ba) <u>Ind</u> otri Barr i) Mir llied Bar	t Barrage co ddu Barrage grage has be lus rage is situa r Pur Khas rage is the	e(b) een co (b) ted in (b) anoth	Sukkur Barr Onstructed on sawat n Pakistan ne Hyderabad ner name of:	river Indus : age (c) this river: ar: (c)	is: Chashma Barr (c) Kabul Karachi	age (d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S	i Shah		
Ti (a) Gi (a) Ki (a) Ai (a)	he oldes) Gu uddu Ba) <u>Ind</u> otri Barr) Mir llied Bar	t Barrage co ddu Barrage crage has be lus rage is situa Pur Khas rage is the a tri Barrage	een co (b) ted in (b) anoth	on the name of: Taunsa Barra Taunsa Barra Taunsa Barra	river Indus: age (c) this river: ar: (c) age (c)	is: Chashma Barı (c) Kabul	age (d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S	i Shah		
TI (a G (a K (a A)	he oldes uddu Ba i) Ind otri Barr i) Mir llied Bar i) Kot otri Barr	t Barrage co ddu Barrage trage has be lus rage is situa r Pur Khas rage is the a tri Barrage rage has bee	e(b) een c (b) ted in (b) anoth (b)	Sukkur Barr Sukkur Barr Onstructed or sawat n Pakistan ne Hyderabad ner name of: Taunsa Barra	iver Indus: age (c) this river: ar: (c) age (c) this river:	is: Chashma Barr (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra	(d)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S	i Shah		
TI (a G (a K (a A I (a K (a	he oldes uddu Ba i) Ind otri Barr i) Mir llied Bar i) Kot otri Barr i) Rav	t Barrage co ddu Barrage trage has be lus rage is situa r Pur Khas rage is the a tri Barrage rage has bee	e(b) een cor (b) anoth (b) en cor (b)	Sukkur Barr Sukkur Barr Onstructed on sawat In Pakistan ne Hyderabad Iter name of: Taunsa Barra Instructed on the	iver Indus: age (c) this river: (c) ge (c) this river: (c)	is: Chashma Barr (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum	(d) ge (d) (d)	d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S	i Shah		
(a)	he oldes uddu Ba i) Ind otri Barr i) Mir llied Bar i) Kot otri Barr i) Rav hulam M	t Barrage co ddu Barrage trrage has be lus rage is situa Pur Khas rage is the a tri Barrage rage has bee vi	onstrue(b) een con (b) ted in (b) anoth (b) en con (b) Barra	Sukkur Barr Onstructed on sawat In Pakistan ne Hyderabad Iner name of: Taunsa Barra Instructed on the Indus ge is the anot	iver Indus: age (c) this river: (c) ge (c) this river: (c) ther name of	is: Chashma Barr (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum of this Barrage:	(d)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S) Chash Chenab	i Shah ma Barrag		
TI (a Gina Gina Gina Gina Gina Gina Gina Gin	he oldes uddu Ba uddu Barr) Mir llied Bar) Kot otri Barr) Rav hulam M	t Barrage co ddu Barrage trage has be lus rage is situa Pur Khas rage is the a tri Barrage rage has bee vi Iuhammad l tri Barrage	onstrue(b) een construe(b) anoth (b) en con (b) Barra (b)	Sukkur Barronstructed on sawat in Pakistan nei Hyderabad in Taunsa Barranstructed on the Indus ge is the anot Sukkur Barra	iver Indus: age (c) ar: (c) age (c) this river: (c) ther name of	is: Chashma Barr (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum of this Barrage: Taunsa Barrag	(d)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S) Chash Chenab	i Shah ma Barrag		
TI (a G (a K) (a Al (a K) (a G (a TI	he oldes uddu Ba i) Ind otri Barr i) Mir llied Bar i) Kot otri Barr i) Rav hulam M i) Kot his syste	ddu Barrage co ddu Barrage rrage has be lus rage is situa r Pur Khas rage is the a ri Barrage rage has bee vi Iuhammad l tri Barrage m of irrigat	onstrue (b) een co (b) anoth (b) en cor (b) Barra (b) ion is	Sukkur Barr Onstructed on sawat In Pakistan ne Hyderabad In Taunsa Barra Instructed on to Indus ge is the anot Sukkur Barra s only used in	iver Indus: age (c) age (c) his river: (c) his river: (c) her name of ge (c) Balochista	is: Chashma Barr (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum of this Barrage: Taunsa Barrag	(d) (ge (d) (d) (e (d)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S) Chash Chenab	i Shah ma Barrag		
(a)	he oldes uddu Ba i) Ind otri Barr i) Kot otri Barr i) Rav hulam M his syste i) Kol	ddu Barrage co ddu Barrage rrage has be lus rage is situa r Pur Khas rage is the a ri Barrage rage has bee vi Iuhammad l tri Barrage m of irrigat e	onstrue (b) een co (b) anoth (b) en cor (b) Barra (b) ion is (b)	Sukkur Barronstructed on sawat in Pakistan nei Hyderabad in Taunsa Barranstructed on the Indus ge is the anothe Sukkur Barranstructed in Karez	iver Indus: age (c) age (c) his river: (c) her name of ge (c) Balochista (c)	is: Chashma Barr (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum of this Barrage: Taunsa Barrag	(d) (ge (d) (d) (e (d)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S) Chash Chenab	i Shah ma Barrag		
(a) GI (a	he oldes uddu Ba i) Ind otri Barr i) Kot otri Barr i) Rav hulam M i) Kot hulam M i) Kot hus syste i) Kol io of the	t Barrage co ddu Barrage trage has be lus rage is situa r Pur Khas rage is the a tri Barrage rage has bee vi Iuhammad l tri Barrage m of irrigat e e need of irr	onstrue (b) een co (b) ted in (b) anoth (b) en con (b) Barra (b) ion is (b)	Sukkur Barronstructed on sawat in Pakistan nei Hyderabad in Taunsa Barranstructed on to Indus is the anoto Sukkur Barrans only used in Karez on is fulfilled	iver Indus: age (c) this river: (c) this river: (c) ther name of the condition (c) through:	is: Chashma Barra (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum of this Barrage: Taunsa Barrag n: Tube-wells	(d) ge (d) (d) (e (d) (d)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S) Chash Chenab Chashma Shadu	i Shah ma Barrag		
(a)	he oldes a) Gu uddu Ba a) Ind otri Barr b) Kot otri Barr c) Rav hulam M b) Kot his syste c) Kot of the c) Pon	t Barrage co ddu Barrage trage has be lus rage is situa Pur Khas rage is the a tri Barrage rage has bee vi Iuhammad l tri Barrage m of irrigat e e need of irrigas	onstrue (b) een co (b) ted in (b) anoth (b) n cor (b) Barra (b) ion is (b)	Sukkur Barronstructed on sawat in Pakistan nei Hyderabad in Taunsa Barranstructed on to Indus is only used in Karez on is fulfilled Small dams	iver Indus: age (c) this river: (c) this river: (c) ther name of ge (c) Balochistat (c) through: (c)	is: Chashma Barr (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum of this Barrage: Taunsa Barrag n: Tube-wells Karez	(d) ge (d) (d) (d) (d)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S) Chash Chenab	i Shah ma Barrag		
(a) Grant (a) Gr	he oldes uddu Ba i) Ind otri Barr i) Kot otri Barr i) Rav hulam M i) Kot his syste i) Kol i) Yon orinklers	ddu Barrage co ddu Barrage rrage has be lus rage is situa r Pur Khas rage is the a ri Barrage rage has bee vi Iuhammad I tri Barrage m of irrigat e e need of irrids Drip Irriga	onstrue (b) een con (b) anoth (b) en con (b) Barra (b) ion is (b) rigation (b)	Sukkur Barronstructed on sawat in Pakistan nei Hyderabad in Taunsa Barranstructed on the Indus ge is the anothe Sukkur Barranstructed in Karez on is fulfilled Small dams	iver Indus age (c) this river: (c) def (c) this river: (c) ther name of ge (c) Balochista (c) through: (c) een installe	is: Chashma Barra (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum of this Barrage: Taunsa Barrag n: Tube-wells Karez d in Pakistan in	(d) (d) (d) (d) (d) (d)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S) Chash Chenab Chashma Shadu Canals	i Shah ma Barrag		
(a)	he oldes uddu Ba i) Ind otri Barr i) Kot otri Barr i) Rav hulam M is syste i) Kol in Of the orinklers i) Sino i) Sino i) Sino	ddu Barrage co ddu Barrage rrage has be lus rage is situa r Pur Khas rage is the a ri Barrage rage has bee vi Iuhammad I tri Barrage m of irrigat e e need of irrids Drip Irrigal	onstrue (b) een construe (b) anoth (b) en construe (b) sion is (b) rigation (b) tion (b)	Sukkur Barronstructed on sawat in Pakistan nei Hyderabad in Taunsa Barranstructed on to Indus ge is the anote Sukkur Barra is only used in Karez on is fulfilled Small dams System has be Balochistan	iver Indus: age (c) this river: (c) dee (c) ther name of (c) Balochista (c) through: (c) een installe (c)	is: Chashma Barra (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum of this Barrage: Taunsa Barrag n: Tube-wells Karez d in Pakistan in	(d) (d) (d) (d) (d) (d)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S) Chash Chenab Chashma Shadu Canals	hah ma Barrag a Barrage		国の発生がある。
(a) Gl (a) Gl (a) Gl (a) Gl (a) Sp (a) Th	he oldes uddu Ba i) Ind otri Barr i) Kot otri Barr i) Rav hulam M i) Kot is syste i) Kol io Pon orinklers i) Since in numbe	ddu Barrage co ddu Barrage rrage has be lus rage is situa r Pur Khas rage is the a ri Barrage rage has bee vi Iuhammad I tri Barrage m of irrigat e e need of irrids Drip Irrigal	onstrue (b) een construe (b) anoth (b) en construe (b) sion is (b) rigation (b) tion (b)	Sukkur Barronstructed on sawat in Pakistan nei Hyderabad in Taunsa Barranstructed on to Indus ge is the anote Sukkur Barra is only used in Karez on is fulfilled Small dams System has be Balochistan	iver Indus: age (c) this river: (c) dee (c) ther name of (c) Balochista (c) through: (c) een installe (c)	is: Chashma Barr (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum of this Barrage: Taunsa Barrag n: Tube-wells Karez	(d) (d) (d) (d) (d) (d)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S) Chash Chenab Chashma Shadu Canals	i Shah ma Barrag		
(a)	he oldes uddu Ba i) Ind otri Barr i) Kot otri Barr i) Rav hulam M i) Kot is syste i) Kol io Pon orinklers i) Since in numbe	t Barrage co ddu Barrage trage has be lus rage is situa r Pur Khas rage is the a tri Barrage rage has bee vi fuhammad l tri Barrage m of irrigat e e need of irrigat db Drip Irriga dh er of small	onstrue (b) een co (b) ted in (b) anoth (b) en con (b) Barra (b) rigation (b) tion (c) (b)	Sukkur Barranstructed on sawat in Pakistan nei Hyderabad ier name of: Taunsa Barranstructed on to Indus ge is the anot Sukkur Barrans only used in Karez on is fulfilled Small dams System has be Balochistan in Pakistan in	iver Indus : age (c) this river: (c) ther name of the condition (c) through: (c) through: (c) through: (c) through: (c) ten installe (c)	is: Chashma Barra (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum of this Barrage: Taunsa Barrag n: Tube-wells Karez d in Pakistan in Khyber Pakht	(d) (e) (d) (d) (d) (d) (i) (i) (i)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S) Chash Chenab Chashma Shadu <u>Canals</u> <u>hwa</u> (d)	hah ma Barrag a Barrage		
(a)	he oldes uddu Ba i) Ind otri Barr i) Kot otri Barr i) Rav hulam M i) Kot his syste i) Kot orinklers i) Pon orinklers i) Sinc ie numb i) 24	t Barrage co ddu Barrage trage has be lus rage is situa Pur Khas rage is the a tri Barrage rage has bee vi fuhammad l tri Barrage m of irrigat e e need of irrigat db Drip Irrigat dh er of small l	onstrue (b) een co (b) ted in (b) anoth (b) en con (b) Barra (b) rigatio (b) tion is (b) Co (b)	Sukkur Barranstructed on sawat in Pakistan nei Hyderabad ier name of: Taunsa Barranstructed on to Indus ge is the anot Sukkur Barrans only used in Karez on is fulfilled Small dams System has be Balochistan in Pakistan in	iver Indus: age (c) this river: (c) ther name of ge (c) Balochistat (c) through: (c) ten installe (c) is: (c)	is: Chashma Barra (c) Kabul Karachi Sukkur Barra Jhelum of this Barrage: Taunsa Barrage: Tube-wells Karez d in Pakistan in Khyber Pakht	(d) (d) (d) (d) (d) (d)	(d) Taur (d) Rav Nawab S) Chash Chenab Chashma Shadu <u>Canals</u> <u>hwa</u> (d)	hah ma Barrag a Barrage		

Chp.7	: Natural Vegetation and Irrigation System	00	Idra Commercial Geography for Class X
(50)	Kala Bagh Dam Project is actually a:		
	(a) Thermal Power Project	(b)	Nuclear Project
	(c) Hydro electric Project	(d)	None of these
(51)			e:
(/	(a) Chashma Barrage	. (b)	
	0	(d)	Jinnah Barrage
(52)	(c) Taunsa Barrage		
(32)	,	the provi	Whyber Pakhtun Khwa (d) Bar
(52)	(a) Sindh (b) Punjab	(c)	Khyber Pakhtun Khwa (d) Balochistan
(53)	, ,		Y Control Powers (4) N
	(a) Bela Forests (b) Coastal Fores		Irrigated Forest (d) Natural Forest
(54)	Alpine Forests found in Pakistan in the		
	(a) Peshawar, Kohat	(b)	Rawalpindi, Islamabad, Murree
	(c) Abbotabad, Mansehra	(d)	Chitral, Dir, Kohistan
(55)			
	(a) Mangla Dam (b) Warsak Dam	(c)	Rawal Dam (d) Tarbela Dam
(56)			
	(a) Alpine Forests		Mangrove Forests
			Riverine Forests
(57)			Riverine Polesis
(37)			Variation (d) Spring
(50)	(a) Seasonal Canal (b) Charsa	(c)	Karez (d) Spring
(58)	Kikar, Ber, Aok and Palosa are the comm		
	(a) Coniferous Forests		Tropical Thorn Forests
	(c) Alpine Forests		Coastal Forests
(59)	These forests are found along Karachi C	oast, Kora	ngi Krect, Sonmiani Coast and the Coast
edited.	of Gawadar:	6.00	
	(a) Bela Forests	(b)	Alpine Forests
	(c) Mangrove Forests		Alpine Scrub Forests
(60)	These forests in Pakistan provide a succe		
	(a) Reverine Forests		Coastal Forests
	(c) Coniferous Forests		Alpine Forests
(61)	Tarbela Dam is located at 32 miles away	from:	
	(a) Sukkur (b) Attock	(c)	Quetta (d) Jhelum
(62)	Mangla Dam has been constructed in Az	ad Jammu	and Kashmir near this city:
	(a) Bagh (b) Mirpur	(c)	Guirat (d) Faisalabad
(63)	Mangla Dam is located at 96km away in	South-East	t of this city:
	(a) Rawalpindi (b) Islamabad	(c)	Lahore (d) Guiranwala
(64)	Alongwith a source of irrigation, these	e are also	helpful in reducing waterlogging and
	salinity:		
	(a) Wells (b) Karez	(c)	Tube-Wells (d) Canals
(65)	Kallar Grass is planted in order to contro	ol:	
	(a) Insects	(b)	Grass hoppers
	(c) Waterlogging and Salinity		Hardness of Soil
(66)	This Dam has been constructed 35 miles	away fron	n Karachi in Balochistan:
	(a) Tarbela Dam (b) Tanda Dam		Hub Dam (d) Cheera Dam
(67)	Rawal Dam, Son Dam, Cheera Dam and I	Khanpur D	am all have been constructed in:
	(a) Upper Indus Plain	(b)	Lower Indus Plain
	(c) Potwar Plateau		Balochistan Plateau
(68)	This method of irrigation is practiced	in sawat.	Valley of Kaghan, Dir. Chitral, Gileit
(/	Skurdu and Azad Kashmir:	,	
	(a) Shaduf (b) Charsa	(c)	Karez (d) Kole
(69)	These forests in Pakistan are loca		
(03)	semi-mountainous regions:	ited in j	nerum, Kawaipinui anu mangia in
		(L)	Canifornia Foresta
	(a) Cold Desert Mountainous Forests		Coniferous Forests
(=c)	(c) <u>Tropical Deciduous Forests</u>		Alpine Forests
(70)	Dry Tropical Thorn Forests and canal irri		
	(a) Bela Forests (b) Mangro	ve Forests	s (c) Rukh Forest (d) Alpine Forests

CHAPTER 8

agriculture of Pakistan

IMPORTANT SHORT QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

Q.1	Write down five senten	es on the Agricultura	l System of	Pakistan.
-----	------------------------	-----------------------	-------------	-----------

Ans: Agricultural System of Pakistan

Five sentences on the agricultural system of Pakistan are following.

- (i) Agriulture system of Pakistan constitute the primary sector in the economy of Pakistan.
- (ii) Agriculture system in Pakistan is basically depends upon the canal irrigation in Pakistan.
- (iii) Agricultural system in Pakistan provides employment to a major portion of the population in Pakistan.
- (iv) Agricultural system in Pakistan is well-organized in order to achieve the aim of self-sufficiency in food.
- (v) Different kinds of crops are cultivated under the agricultural system of Pakistan which not only meet the food requirements but some of agricultural produce is exported to earn foreign exchange.
- Q.2 Write down five characteristics of the Agriculture of Pakistan.

Ans: The Characteristics of Agriculture of Pakistan

The characteristics of the Agriculture of Pakistan are following.

- (i) Agriculture plays main role in the economy of Pakistan. It consists the primary sector of economy.
- (ii) The main objective of the economic policies of Pakistan is to develop agriculture in order to make Pakistan self-sufficient in food.
- (iii) The agriculture in Pakistan not only provide food but also cash crops.
- (iv) The agriculture in Pakistan is dominated by feudal lords who have vast lands.
- (v) The vast lands of the fuedal lords are cultivated by their peasants and farmers.
- Q.3 Describe two major crops of Pakistan with examples.

Ans: The Major Groups of Crops in Pakistan

The crops in Pakistan are classified into two major groups which are following.

(i) Rabi Crops

The crops which are grown in Pakistan in the month of April and May are called Rabi Crops. The examples of Rabi crops are following.

- (i) Wheat
- (ii)

(iii) Gram

- (iv) Oil Seeds
- (v)
- Tobacco

Barley

(ii) Kharif Crops

The crops which are grown in Pakistan in the months of May and June are harvested in the months of September and October are called Kharif Crops. The examples of Kharif Crops are following.



- (ii) Maize
- (iii) Cotton

- (iv) Sugercane
- (v) Sorghum and Millet

Q.4 Write down five sentences on the importance of Agriculture in Pakistan.

Ans: The Importance of Agriculture in Pakistan

The importance of agriculture in Pakistan can be described as following.

(i) Agriculture constitutes a large sector in Pakistan, it is estimated that 30% of the national



income is obtained from agriculture, the ratio of agricultural products in the exports is 20%. Agricultural production influence the prices of other commodities, thus the foreign trade of Pakistan depends upon agriculture.

(ii) Agriculture is a big source of providing employment to labour of Pakistan. Similarly the country requirements are satisfied by the agriculture. Nearly 40% of the population of

Pakistan is associated with agriculture.

(iii) The foreign exchange which is obtained by the export of agricultural products is used in purchasing defence products for the need of the country.

(iv) The agricultural markets are extended due to the development of agriculture. It also

organizes the foreign trade of Pakistan.

(v) Agriculture in Pakistan provide cheap raw material to many industries.

Q.5 Write down any five causes of the backwardness of Agriculture in Pakistan. (OR) Write down any five problems of Agriculture in Pakistan.

Ans: The Causes of Backwardness of Agriculture in Pakistan

The causes of backwardness of agriculture can be described as following. These are the problems of agriculture in Pakistan.

(i) The major cause of the backwardness of agriculture in Pakistan is lack of capital. The income of the cultivators are very limited. They cannot afford to buy modern agricultural equipments. Due to this per acre agricultural production remains low.

(ii) One of the cause of the agricultural backwardness in Pakistan is water logging and salinity. Million acres of the cultivated lands become ineffective because of water logging and

salinity.

(iii) Two types of land fragments are found in Pakistan. Vast lands are owned by the feudal lords who cannot look after them properly. The small land fragments are owned by peasants who cannot use modern techniques and equipments on them, so the collective agricultural produce remains low.

(iv) Floods are the most devastating natural calamity due to heavy rainfall. Floods destroy standing crops over million acres areas. The storage of crops is also destroyed due to

floods.

- (v) Villages and small towns are the centres of agriculture in Pakistan. There are no constructed roads, if they are present, they are in a bad condition for transportation. Thus Pakistani farmers have to face enormous difficulties in taking their production to the market for lack of transport facilities.
- Q.6 Write down five steps or suggestions to solve the agricultural problems in Pakistan.

Ans: The Steps or Suggestions to Solve Agricultural Problems in Pakistan

The steps or suggestions to solve agricultural problems in Pakistan are following.

(i) The fundamental need is to provide proper education to the farmers and cultivators about agricultural methods and modern techniques.

(ii) Loans should be provided to the farmers and cultivators on easy terms and conditions.
 (iii) Agricultural markets should be expended and transportation facilities should be made.

(iii) Agricultural markets should be expended and transportation facilities should be made better.

(iv) Modern techniques and methods should be introduced and training should be given to the

farmers and cultivators.

(v) Better seeds, chemical fertilizers and modern agricultural equipments should be provided to the cultivators and farmers. Q.7 Describe five steps taken by the Government of Pakistan to develop agriculture in Pakistan.

Ans: The Steps Taken by the Government for the Development of Agriculture

The steps taken by the Government of Pakistan for the development of Pakistan are following.

(i) Government has extended the educational facilities to the farmers through Agriculture Department. Radio and television programmes on agriculture also broadcasted.

(ii) The Government of Pakistan has also started schemes for the provision of agricultural loans on easy terms and conditions.

(iii) Artificial Means of Irrigation have been made more effective by the Government.

(iv) Tube-wells have been installed at various places and other methods are being used to control water logging and salinity.

(v) The Government of Pakistan has established many agricultural industries for Agricultural Research.

Q.8 Write down the names of Food Crops and Cash crops of Pakistan.

Ans: Food Crops of Pakistan

The names of the food crops are following.

(i) Wheat (ii) Rice

(iii) Maize

(iv) Pulses

Cash Crops of Pakistan

The names of the cash crops of Pakistan are following.

(i) Cotton

(ii) Sugercane

(iii) Tobacco

(iv) Oil seeds

Q.9 Write the names of five places where wheat is cultivated in Pakistan.

Ans: The Places of the Cultivation of Wheat

Five places of the cultivation of wheat in Pakistan are following.

(i) Rahim Yar Khan (Punjab)

(ii) Chackwal (Punjab)

(iii) Nawabshah (Sindh)

(iv) Kohat (Khyber Pakhtun Khwa)

(v) Khuzdar (Balochistan)

Q.10 Write down five areas of the cultivation of Rice in Pakistan.

Ans: The Areas of the Cultivation of Rice

Five areas where rice is cultivated in Pakistan are following.

(i) Sialkot (Punjab)

(ii) Gujranwala (Punjab)

(iii)

(iii) Larkana (Sindh)

(iv) Dadu (Sindh)

(v) Mardan (Khyber Pakhtun Khwa)

Q.11 Write the names of five places where wheat is cultivated in the province Punjab.

Ans: The Places of the Cultivation of Wheat in Punjab

The names of five places where wheat is cultivated in the province Punjab are followings:

(i) Attock

(ii) Rahim Yar Khan

(iii) Mianwali

Noshero Feroz

(iv) Kasur (v) Chackwal

Q.12 Write the names of five places of the cultivation of wheat in Sindh.

Ans: The Places of the Cultivation of Wheat in Sindh

The names of five places of the cultivation of wheat in Sindh are following.

(i) Khairpur (iv) Ghotki

(ii) Nawab Shah

(v) Mirpur Khas

ve places in the land sialkot Hafizabad e down five are tarkana Dadu e down the metan. Places of the product Larkana Dadu e down the metan. Places of the places Sargodha (Pun Noshero Feroz Nascerabad (But down five are sargodha Toba Tek Single down the metan the m	Punjab w (ii) (v) reas of Production of (ii) (v) reames	where Rice is Gujranwal Mandi Bal the cultiva uction of Rice in Sind Jaccobabac Badin of five pla ivation of sugercane is (ii) (iv) An an) the product on of Suge luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	Rice in cultivated a (iii) nauddin tion of Rice in Share follows in (iii) ces where Sugeroa cultivated in pairpur (Sin ardan (Khyl tion of sugeroa in the cultivated in the cu	re following. Narowal ce in the proving. Shikarpur sugarcane is pakistan are following. Pakhtun Khwaj	ce Sindh. cultivated
ve places in the land sialkot Hafizabad e down five are tarkana Dadu e down the metan. Places of the product Larkana Dadu e down the metan. Places of the places Sargodha (Pun Noshero Feroz Nascerabad (But down five are sargodha Toba Tek Single down the metan the m	Punjab w (ii) (v) reas of Production of (ii) (v) reames	where Rice is Gujranwal Mandi Bal the cultiva uction of Rice in Sind Jaccobabac Badin of five pla ivation of sugercane is (ii) (iv) An an) the product on of Suge luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	Rice in cultivated a (iii) nauddin tion of Rice in Share follow in (iii) ces where Sugeroa cultivated in pairpur (Sin ardan (Khyl tion of sugeroane in Percane in Per	Punjab Tre following. Narowal Tre in the proving indh Tring. Shikarpur Be Sugarcane is in Pakistan are following in the language in the	ce Sindh. cultivated
Sialkot Hafizabad down five ar Areas of the reas of the produ Larkana Dadu down the material control of five places Sargodha (Pun Noshero Feroz Naseerabad (B down five areas areas of pro mes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the material	Punjab w (ii) (v) reas of Prode action of (ii) (v) names of e Culti s where njab) c (Sindh) Balochists eas of to duction (ii) (v) h (v)	where Rice is Gujranwal Mandi Bal the cultiva uction of Rice in Sind Jaccobabae Badin of five pla ivation of sugercane is (ii) (iv) An an) the product on of Suge luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	cultivated a a (iii) nauddin tion of Ri Rice in S h are follow i (iii) ces wher Sugeroa cultivated in nardan (Khyl tion of su ercane in P	re following. Narowal ice in the proving. Sindh ring. Shikarpur e Sugarcane is ane n Pakistan are following. gercane in the land by t	owing.
Hafizabad	(ii) (v) reas of Production of (iii) (v) rames of E Culti s where njab) c (Sindh) Balochista eas of to ductic s of production (ii) (v)	Gujranwal Mandi Bal the cultiva uction of Rice in Sind Jaccobabae Badin of five pla ivation of sugercane is (ii) (iv) Man) the product on of Sug Bhakkur Okara	a (iii) nauddin tion of Ri Rice in S h are follow d (iii) ces wher Sugeroa cultivated in airpur (Sin ardan (Khyl tion of su ercane in	Narowal ice in the proving indh ring. Shikarpur e Sugarcane is ane following pakistan are following percane in the language punjab are following pakistan are following percane in the language pakistan are following percane in the language punjab are following percane p	owing.
Areas of the reas of the reas of the product Larkana Dadu e down the metan. Places of the Noshero Feroz Naseerabad (Burdown five areas of Promes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the metans of the metans of the reas of the sargodha Toba Tek Single down the metans of the	e Cultis where high by a Gindh construction of the cultis where high by a (Sindh) allochists are of the cultic sof production of the cultic soft production of the cu	the cultival uction of Rice in Sind Jaccobabac Badin of five pla ivation of sugercane is (ii) (iv) An an) the product on of Sug Bhakkur Okara	Rice in S hare follow d (iii) ces wher Sugeroa cultivated in hardan (Khyl tion of su ercane in	sindh ing. Shikarpur e Sugarcane is n Pakistan are follo dh) per Pakhtun Khwaj gercane in the I	owing.
Areas of the reas of the reas of the product Larkana Dadu e down the nation. Places of the une of five places Sargodha (Pun Noshero Feroz Nascerabad (Berdown five areas of Promes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the national sargodha toba to the national sargodha toba toba toba toba toba toba toba tob	e Production of (ii) (v) names e Cultius where njab) c (Sindh) Balochista eas of to duction (ii) (v)	Rice in Sind Jaccobabac Badin of five pla ivation of sugercane is (ii) (iv) An an) the product on of Suge luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	hare followed (iii) ces where Sugeroa cultivated in pairpur (Sin ardan (Khylaten et al., and an et al., and	sindh ing. Shikarpur e Sugarcane is n Pakistan are follo dh) per Pakhtun Khwaj gercane in the I	owing.
Larkana Dadu e down the metan. Places of the une of five places Sargodha (Pun Noshero Feroz Nascerabad (Be down five areas of Promes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the metans of the m	e Cultiss where high (ii) (v) (Sindh)	Rice in Sind Jaccobabac Badin of five pla ivation of sugercane is (ii) (iv) An the product on of Suge luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	h are follow d (iii) ces wher Sugeroa cultivated in airpur (Sin ardan (Khyl tion of su ercane in	ring. Shikarpur e Sugarcane is ane n Pakistan are follo dh) per Pakhtun Khwa; gercane in the l n Punjab unjab are followin	owing.
Larkana Dadu e down the metan. Places of the une of five places Sargodha (Pun Noshero Feroz Naseerabad (B e down five area Toba Tek Single down the me	(ii) (v) names e Culti s where njab) z (Sindh) Balochists eas of the duction s of prod (ii) h (v)	Jaccobabac Badin of five plan ivation of sugercane is (ii) Kl (iv) Ma an) the product on of Suge luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	d (iii) ces wher Sugeroa cultivated in pardam (Khyla tion of su ercane in P	Shikarpur e Sugarcane is n Pakistan are follo dh) per Pakhtun Khwa; gercane in the I	owing.
Dadu e down the nation. Places of the une of five places Sargodha (Pun Noshero Feroz Naseerabad (B. down five areas of Promes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the national contractions.	e Cultiss where hijab) (Sindh) (Salochista eas of the control of t	Badin of five pla ivation of sugercane is (ii) KI (iv) Ma an) the product on of Suge luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	Sugeroa cultivated in pairpur (Sin pardan (Khyl tion of su ercane in P	e Sugarcane is n Pakistan are follo dh) per Pakhtun Khwa; gercane in the I	owing.
Places of the une of five places Sargodha (Pun Noshero Feroz Naseerabad (Be down five areas of Promes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the new five mes of the mes of	e Culties where many control (Sindh) and contr	sugercane is (ii) Kl (iv) Ma an) the product on of Suge luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	Sugeroa cultivated in pairpur (Sin produp (Khyl tion of su produce in P	n Pakistan are follo dh) per Pakhtun Khwa; gercane in the l n Punjab unjab are followin	owing.
Places of the une of five places Sargodha (Pun Noshero Feroz Naseerabad (Be down five areas of Promes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the new five mes of the mes of	e Culties where many control (Sindh) and contr	sugercane is (ii) Kl (iv) Ma an) the product on of Suge luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	Sugeroa cultivated in pairpur (Sin produp (Khyl tion of su produce in P	n Pakistan are follo dh) per Pakhtun Khwa; gercane in the l n Punjab unjab are followin	owing.
Noshero Feroz Naseerabad (Bun Naseerabad (Bun Naseerabad (Bun Action five areas Areas of Pro mes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the na	s where njab) z (Sindh) z (Sindh) galochistate of the control of t	sugercane is (ii) Kl (iv) Ma an) the product on of Suge luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	cultivated in nairpur (Sin ardan (Khyl tion of su preane in greane in P	n Pakistan are follo dh) per Pakhtun Khwaj gercane in the I n Punjab unjab are followin	Punjab.
Noshero Feroz Naseerabad (Bun Naseerabad (Bun Naseerabad (Bun Action five areas Areas of Pro mes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the na	s where njab) z (Sindh) z (Sindh) galochistate of the control of t	sugercane is (ii) Kl (iv) Ma an) the product on of Suge luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	cultivated in nairpur (Sin ardan (Khyl tion of su preane in greane in P	n Pakistan are follo dh) per Pakhtun Khwaj gercane in the I n Punjab unjab are followin	Punjab.
Noshero Feroz Nascerabad (B down five are reas of Pro mes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single	njab) z (Sindh) z (Sindh) Balochistz eas of t eduction s of prod (ii) h (v)	(ii) Ki) (iv) Ma an) the product on of Sugal luction of sugal Bhakkur Okara	nairpur (Sin ardan (Khyl tion of su ercane i l gercane in P	dh) per Pakhtun Khwaj gercane in the I n Punjab unjab are followin	Punjab.
Noshero Feroz Naseerabad (B down five are reas of Pro mes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single	(Sindh) Balochista eas of the duction s of prod (ii) h (v)	(iv) Maan) the product on of Sugar luction of sugar Bhakkur Okara	tion of su Preane in ercane in	per Pakhtun Khwa gercane in the I n Punjab unjab are followin	Punjab.
Nascerabad (B down five are reas of Pro mes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the na	Balochista eas of a duction s of prod (ii) h (v)	an) the product on of Sug luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	tion of su ercane in ercane in P	gercane in the l n Punjab unjab are followin	Punjab.
reas of Promes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the ne	s of prod (ii) h (v)	on of Sug luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	ercane i ercane in P	n Punjab unjab are followin	
reas of Promes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Single down the ne	s of prod (ii) h (v)	on of Sug luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	ercane i ercane in P	n Punjab unjab are followin	
mes of five areas Sargodha Toba Tek Singl down the n	s of prod (ii) h (v)	luction of sug Bhakkur Okara	ercane in P	unjab are followin	g.
Sargodha Toba Tek Singl down the n	(ii) h (v)	Bhakkur Okara			š.
down the n					
down the n	-				45.6
	ames c	of five pla	ces wher	e sugercane is	cultivated
					6 27 1
laces of the	e Culti	vation of	CHARLES	no in Cindh	9 (-)
ces of the cultiv	ration of	sugercane in	Sindh are	following.	MODEL IN
Khairpur	(ii)	Nawabshal		Noshero Forez	Control of
Sanghar	(v)	Mirpur Kha	ıs		with 1
down the area	as of tl	he Product	ion of Co	ton in the Punj	ab.
reas of the	Produ	etion of	Cotton in	Punjab	
	-				1
	(VIII)	Saniwai	(IX)	venari	
	ces whe	ere cotton i	s produce	d in Sindh	
					4 14 79 17
	7 .		102 (11)	Janghai .	
			and desir		
		1 1000000	producin	g areas in Kh	vher Pahht
	as of the product Bahawalpur Rajanpur Multan Lodhran down the places of the cultive Sukkur Ghotki Mirpur Khas	as of the Production of a Bahawalpur (ii) Rajanpur (v) Multan (viii) Lodhran down the places who laces of the Cultices of the cultivation of Sukkur (ii) Ghotki (v) Mirpur Khas (viii)	tas of the Production of Cas of the production of cotton in the Bahawalpur (ii) Bahawalnag Rajanpur (v) Dera Ghazi Multan (viii) Sahiwal Lodhran down the places where cotton is cost of the cultivation of cotton in Single Sukkur (ii) Khairpur Ghotki (v) Noshero Fe	treas of the Production of Cotton in the Punjab are to Bahawalpur (ii) Bahawalnagar (iii) Rajanpur (v) Dera Ghazi Khan(vi) Multan (viii) Sahiwal (ix) Lodhran down the places where cotton is produced to the Cultivation of Cotton in Sindh are followed by the Cotton in Sindh are followed by the Cultivation of Cot	Rajanpur (v) Dera Ghazi Khan(vi) Muzaffargarh Multan (viii) Sahiwal (ix) Vehari Lodhran down the places where cotton is produced in Sindh. laces of the Cultivation of Cotton in Sindh ces of the cultivation of cotton in Sindh are following. Sukkur (ii) Khairpur (iii) Nawab Shah Ghotki (v) Noshero Feroz (vi) Sanghar

The names of Tobacco producing areas in Khyber Pakhtun Khwa are following.

The geographical conditions for the cultivation of rice are following.

(i) Rice is a plant of hot and humid climate, therefore 80°P to 90°P temperature remains favourable for the cultivation of rice.

Geographical Conditions for the Cultivation of Rice

Ans:

(ii) In the cold climate, the cultivation of rice is not possible, however dry and cold climate remains better at the time of harvesting of rice.

(iii) Rice needs a lot of water for its cultivation, therefore those regions where average rate of rainfall is more than 40 inches remain better for the cultivation of rice.

(iv) In the most areas of Pakistan, the rate of annual rainfall is less than 20 inches which is not enough for the cultivation of rice, there the cultivation is done through canal irrigation.

(v) Alluvial fertile soil remains favourable for the cultivation of rice but the clay and loamy soil not favourable. The soil which has an ability to hold water is favourable for the cultivation of rice, therefore the soil with acidic properties remains the most favourable for the cultivation of rice.

Q.24 Describe Geographical conditions for the production of cotton.

Ans: Geographical Conditions for the Production of Cotton

The geographical conditions for the production of cotton are following.

(i) Cotton is a plant of temperate region but it can also be grown in sub-tropical regions,

(ii) The cultivation of cotton requires high temperature, 80°F to 100°F temperature remains better for its cultivation. At the time of picking 60°F temperature remains sufficient.

(iii) 20 inches to 40 inches average rate of rainfall is required for the cultivation of cotton.

(iv) Excess amount of water is harmful for cotton plant. Only three to four times per dairrigation is sufficient for the cultivation of cotton.

(v) The alluvial soil is the most favourable for the cultivation of cotton. Sandy soil which is actually a mixture of sand and clay is the most favourable for the cultivation of cotton. (i)

Describe five Geographical Conditions for the cultivation of sugercane.

Ans: Geographical Conditions for the Cultivation of Sugercane

The geographical conditions for the cultivation of sugercane can be described as following. Sugercane cannot be cultivated in extremely cold regions. It is a plant of hot climate.

The cultivation of suger cane is not possible in those areas where the temperature remains (ii) below from 40°F. The cultivation of sugercane requires 70°F to 80°F temperature. (iii) ·

Humidity is also required for the cultivation of sugercane, thus severe dry climate is harmful for the cultivation of sugercane.

The average rate of rainfall for the cultivation of sugercane is 6 inches to 10 inches per (iv) year. Artificial means of irrigation are used to overcome the shortage of water. Dry climate is to be necessery at the time of harvesting sugercane crop. If rainfall appears at the time of harvesting, the sweetness of sugercane becomes less.

Alluvial soil, volcanic ash and the soil with lime consider the best for the cultivation of (v)

sugercane. The use of fertilizers increases its production.

Describe Geographical conditions necessary for the cultivation of Tobacco. Q.26

Ans: Geographical Conditions for the Cultivation of Tobacco

The geographical conditions necessary for the cultivation of Tobacco are following.

(i) Tobacco is actually a plant of Tropical humid climate but the cultivation of Tobacco can be done in Sub-Tropical and Temperate regions.

(ii) 64°F to 80°F temperature remains suitable for the cultivation of tobacco. Extreme cold

climate is harmful for its cultivation.

The average annual rate of rainfall for the favourable cultivation of tobacco is 20 inches (iii) 25 inches. High rate of rainfall and very large standing amount of water in the crop prove to be harmful. Slow rainfall with regular time period remains favourable for the cultivation of tobacco.

Extreme rainfall and very dry climate both influence badly on the cultivation tobacco. I (iv) Pakistan tobacco is cultivated with the help of canal irrigation.

Fertile loamy soil remains better for the cultivation of tobacco. The soil which contain (v) lime, potassium and organic components is considered as the most favourable for the cultivation of tobacco.

Q.27 Describe the production of Sorghum and Millet in Pakistan.

Ans: Production of Sorghum and Millet

Sorghum and Millet are the crops of animal fooder. These are Kharif Crops of Pakistan They are cultivated in Pakistan in light land and relatively dry season. These crops are cultivated the canal irrigated areas of Pakistan as well as in rain-fed areas. Both Sorghum and Milet ar cultivated in those areas where soil is not good and they are usually produced in those areas which remain in drought. Sorghum and Millet are cultivated in the Punjab and Sindh provinces. In the Punjab Attock, Gujrat, Sialkot and Sargodha district grow Millet. In Sindh Millet is also cultivate in Tharparkar, Umerkot and Mirpur Khas. Sorghum is cultivated in the Northern districts Punjab Attock, Rawalpindi, Jhelum and Sargodha. In Sindh, Sukkur, Khairpur, Nawabsha Noshero Feroz, Sanghar and Dadu districts are the main areas of the cultivation of Sorghum.

Write a note on the cultivation of Pulses in Pakistan.

The Cultivation of Pulses in Pakistan

Different varieties of pulses are cultivated in Pakistan. The gram leads in all the pulse Gram is cultivated in Mianwali and Sargodha in large quantity. In Khyber Pakhtun Khwa goo quality of gram is grown in Bannu and Dera Ismail Khan. In Pakistan, all varieties of Pulses lik Lathyrus (Moong), Lentis (Masoor) and Vetchling (Mash) are cultivated in the Punjab, Sindh an other parts of Pakistan.

Q.29 Describe briefly about the cultivation of Vegetables and Fruits in Pakistan.

Ans: The Cultivation of Fruits in Pakistan

Different kinds of vegetables are grown in Pakistan. These vegetables are grown to acquire the food requirements. These vegetables are grown according to the needs and demand in the various areas of Pakistan. Potato, Pumpkin, Tomato, Ladyfinger, Brinjal, Cabbage, Cauliflower, Carrot, Suger beet, Bitter gourd, Spinach, onion etc. are cultivated all over Pakistan. Pakistan is self-sufficient in the production of vegetables. Onion and Potatoes are exported to other countries

The Production of Fruits in Pakistan

Different kinds of fruits are produced in Pakistan. These fruits are grown in specific areas of Pakistan due to variation in the climatic conditions. In Pakistan, fruits are mainly produced in the province Balochistan and Khyber Pakhtun Khwa. Apples, grapes, plum, apricot, pears, pomegranate, mangoes, banana, melon, watermelon, dates etc. are commonly produced in Pakistan. In the province Punjab mangoes, oranges, musk and dates are grown. In Sindh, dates, mangoes, banana, melon and watermelon are produced. Dry fruits like almond, pistachio, kaju, walnut and fig are grown in Balochistan and Khyber Pakhtun Khwa. Pakistan earns a lot of foreign exchange by exporting fresh as well as dry fruits.

Write the names of five agricultural crops which are the source of provision of raw materials for industries.

Ans: Agricultural Crops and Industries

The agricultural crops which provide raw-materials for industries are following.

Cotton; It provides raw material for textile industry. (i) (ii)

Sugercane: It provides raw material for suger industry. (iii)

Tobacco; It provides raw material for cigarette manufacturing industries Wheat; It provides raw-material for flour mills and bakery products. (iv)

Oil Seeds; These provide raw material for cooking oil and Ghee industries. (v)

IMPORTANT DETAILED TYPE QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Describe the suitable geographical conditions, areas of cultivation, Q.1production and trade of wheat in Pakistan

Ans: Wheat

Wheat is an important food crop of Pakistan. It is commonly used as food in Pakistan. Wheat plant is belonged to grass family. The height of the plant is 3 to 5 feet. Wheat is cultivated in rain-fed areas as well as through canal irrigation.

The Geographical Conditions for the Cultivation

The physical or geographical conditions which are necessary for the cultivation of wheat are following.

(1)The Climate

Wheat is a Rabi crop, it is cultivated in Pakistan in the months of October to December. The temperature and rainfall is favourable for the cultivation of wheat, thus the climate of Pakistan is the most favourable for the cultivation of wheat.

(2) Temperature

Wheat is a winter crop. For the good quality production of wheat at least 100 days are required down of which the temperature should remain 50°F to 66°F. Dry climate and 70°F to 80°F temperature remains better at the time of harvesting of wheat.

(3)Rainfall

Average rate of annual rainfall in the most areas of Pakistan is less than 20 inches. During



winter season, the rate of rainfall becomes more low. Wheat is cultivated in Pakistan through canal irrigation. Wheat crop is irrigated almost five times during its preparation. 50cm average annual rate of rainfall is necessary for the cultivation of wheat in hot regions while 25cm annual rate of rainfall is enough for cold regions.

Soll (4)

Alluvial and loamy soil are considered better for the cultivation of wheat. The soil which contains lime and nitrogenous component remains the best for the cultivation of wheat. In Pakistan wheat is cultivated in all kinds of soil volcanic soil. Brown soil and Loess soil are also considered better for the cultivation of wheat.

(5) Season

Wheat is a winter crop. It is classified in the group of Rabi Crops. Wheat is sown in Pakistan in the months of October, November and December. The harvesting of the wheat crop is done in the months of April and May.

The Production and Distribution of Wheat in Pakistan

In Pakistan wheat is cultivated over 37.1% of the total area of cultivation. Pakistan ranks 10th in the production of wheat. Wheat is cultivated in all four provinces of Pakistan but the cultivation of wheat is the most common in the canal irrigated regions of Pakistan. 70% of the total production of wheat is obtained from one acre of the cultivated land. The distribution of the production of wheat in Pakistan can be described as following.

The Punjub (II)

In the Punjab, wheat is cultivated in Sialkot, Gujranwala, Faisalabad, Sahiwal, Rahim Yar Khan, Attock, Jhelum, Chackwal, Kasur and Bahawalpur.

Sindh an

wheat is cultivated in the districts Khairpur, Nawabshah, Noshero Feroz, Ghotki, Sanghar, Mirpur Khas, Sukkur, Jaccobabad, Umer Kot and Hyderabad

Khyber Pakhtun Khwa

in Khyber Pakhtun Khwa, wheat is cultivated in Mardan, Peshawar, Bannu and Dera Ismail Khan.

Balochistan (iv)

In Balochistan, wheat is cultivated in Khuzdar, Naseerabad and Jaffarabad.

The Trade of Wheat

In Pakistan, the main objective of the agriculture is to acquire self-sufficiency in food, therefore the trade is done locally. The wheat is supplied to every part of Pakistan. It is supplied to the flour mills and the industries of manufacturing bakery items. The government also purchases wheat in order to provide the flour at cheap prices to the people.

Describe the geographical conditions suitable for the method of cultivation Q.2 of Rice. Describe also the production, distribution and trade of rice in Pakistan.

Ans: Rice

Rice is the second important food crops of Pakistan. It is used as food after wheat. The consumption of rice in Pakistan is high. After completing the country requirements, surplus rice is exported to other countries from Pakistan. Rice is the crop of the summer season. It belongs to the grass family.

Geographical Conditions for the Cultivation of Rice

The Geographical conditions suitable for the cultivation of Rice in Pakistan are following.

(1) The Climate

Rice is the crop of summer season. It is a plant of hot dry climate. It flourishes in Monsoon type of climate. Rice is cultivated in the regions of tropical and sub-tropical type of climate. It requires hot and humid climate for its cultivation.

(2) Temperature

High temperature is required for the cultivation of rice because rice is the plant of hot and dry climate. It flourishes most at high temperature. 80°F to 90°F temperature is required for the cultivation of rice. Cold and dry season remains better at the time of the harvesting of crop.

(3) Rainfall

Rice is a water plant, therefore it needs a lot of water for its cultivation. The regions where annual rate of rainfall is more than 40 inches are better for its cultivation. In Pakistan the average rate of rainfall is less than 40 inches, therefore rice is cultivated through canal irrigation. The crop of rice requires irrigation at least eighteen times during the time of its preparation.

(4) Soil

The crop of rice flourishes in standing water, therefore the soil which has an ability to hold water remains better for the cultivation of rice. Alluvial fertile soil with a mixture of clay and loamy soil is considered the best for the cultivation of rice.

(5) Season

Rice is classified in the Kharif crops of Pakistan. The crop of rice is planted in the months of June and July. The crop of rice is harvested during the month of October and November.

Methods of the Cultivation of Rice in Pakistan

The methods of the cultivation of rice are almost same all over Pakistan. All the methods of cultivation passes following steps.

(i) The preparation of land should be necessary before the plantation of rice. Field is made soft by deep ploughing so that the herbs and shrubs are removed. Water is filled in the field of rice before the plantation of the nursery of rice. Ploughing is done three to four times so that the water and soil become mixed properly. During the plantation of the nursery of rice, it is necessary of standing water upto 2 inches in the rice fields.

(ii) The cultivation of rice is done with the plantation of nursery first then this nursery is transplanted in paddyfields. The seeds of rice first planted in nursery. Before the plantation, the seeds are made wet by dipping them into water than they are kept under shady places covering them with wet sacks. When the seeds start to grow, they are planted in nursery in rows. The nursery of rice is prepared before 30 to 40 days of the transplantion of seedlings into paddy field.

(iii) When the seedlings become ready in the nursery, then these seedlings are transplanted into paddy field again. These young plants of nursery then planted into the paddy field within standing water with help of machines or manually in different rows. The distance between two consecutive rows and plants in a row is kept 8 to 10 inches. Almost two young plants are kept in one hole of the plantation.

(iv) The plantation of crop in time produces better results. In Sindh, the better results. In Sindh, the better time for the cultivation of crop is 25 April to 30 June. In Punjab the time of cultivation crop is May 20 to 20 June. The cultivation of rice crop is done in Khyber Pakhtun Khwa in 1st of May to 7th of June while in Balochistan the cultivation is done during May 30 to June 30.

(v) The crops of rice becomes ready in 90 to 120 days, therefore the harvesting of rice is done in the months of October and November. When the plants of rice are converted into brown colour and their spikes are converted into golden colour, then harvesting of the crop is started.

The Production and Distribution of Rice in Pakistan

In Pakistan two important types of rice Basmati Rice and Irri Rice are produced. Its shares 6.1% in the exports of Pakistan. It is cultivated over 10% of the total area of cultivation in Pakistan. The cultivation of rice is limited to the canal irrigated areas of Pakistan, therefore Sindh and Punjab have prominent status in the production of rice in Pakistan. 90% production of rice is obtained from the Punjab and Sindh. Pakistan ranks 14th among the rice producing countries of the world. The average annual production of rice in Pakistan is almost 17 million tonnes. The distribution of rice producing areas in Pakistan is following.

(i) The Punjab

In Punjab rice is produced in large quantity in the districts Gujranwala, Sialkot, Narowal, Hasizabad, Mandi Bahauddin, Lahore, Shaikhupura, Kasur and Okara. In Punjab the districts of Sargodha, Khushab, Faisalabad, Toba-tek Singh, Jhang, Sahiwal, Khanewal, Pakpattan, Muzzaffargarh, Dera Ghazi Khan, Rajanpur, Rahim Yar Khan and Bahawalpur are the secondary produces of rice. 54% of the total production of rice obtained from the Punjab.

(ii) Sindh

In Sindh, rice is cultivated in large quantity in Sukkur Division. Besides this rice is also cultivated in the districts Larkana, Jaccobabad, Shikarpur, Dadu, Badin, Thatta, Nawab Shah and Hyderabad. In Sindh, different kinds of rice like Irri, Beghami, Jiji, Mehran, Latifi, Abbassi and Seda-Hayat are cultivated.

(iii) Khyber Pakhtun Khwa

In Khyber Pakhtun Khwa, rice is cultivated in Peshawar, Dera Ismail Khan, Kurram Agency, Mardan, Sawabi, Malakand, Swat, Shangla, Bannu and Bajor Agency.

(iv) Balochistan

In Balochistan rice is cultivated in large quantity in Jafferabad and Naseerabad districts. 90% rice in Palochistan is obtained from these districts. Besides this rice is cultivated over a limited area of the districts Turbat and Khuzdar in Balochistan.

The Trade of Rice in Pakistan

Rice is an important food crop of Pakistan, therefore a large quantity of rice is consumed locally. Rice is transported to every part of Pakistan, hence the domestic trade of rice has been extended to all parts of Pakistan. Rice from Pakistan is also exported to many other countries. Basmati Rice which is mostly produced in Punjab is liked all over the world. Turkey, Saudi Arabia, United States of Emirates (U.A.E.), Dubai and other countries of the Middle East are the big importers of rice from Pakistan. Besides this rice is also exported to South America, Italy, France and many Asian countries.

Q.3 Write about the suitable geographical conditions, areas of cultivation, production of trade of Maize in Pakistan.

Ans: Maize

Maize or corn is the crop of tropical region but it is also cultivated successfully in moderate climate regions. The place of birth of maize is America and Canada. Glucose, starch, edible oil, paper board are manufactured through it. Its skin dried and the dried by product of its plant are used as fooder for animals and for fuel. The plant of maize or corn has an average height 6 to 8 feet. The crop of maize becomes ready within a period of two to three months.

Geographical Conditions for the Cultivation of Maize

The geographical conditions for the cultivation of Maize or corn are followng.

(1) The Climate

Hot and humid climate is required for the better cultivation of maize. In high temperature and humidity the cultivation of maize produces good results.

(2) Temperature

Maize is a crop of summer season. 70°F to 80°F temperature remain favourable for the cultivation of maize. In Pakistan, the temperature remains 90°F to 100°F during the cultivation of maize, therefore the needs of irrigation increase. Extreme cold and fog are harmful for the cultivation of maize.

(3) Rainfall

Average rate of annual rainfall for the cultivation of maize is 20 inches. Monsoon regions where the annual rate of rainfall is 40 inches are suitable for the cultivation of maize. The areas where rate of annual rainfall is less than 20 inches, the cultivation of maize is done through canal irrigation.

(4) Soil

Pertile soil is necessary for the cultivation of maize. Such soil which contains organic plane materials is the favourable for the cultivation of maize. In Pakistan alluvial soil, the soil of plains and the soil of fertile mountainous valley all are favourable for the cultivation.

(5) Season

Maize is classified in Kharif crops of Pakistan. It is cultivated during summer season in the months of May and June. In Pakistan, maize is cultivated as cereal crop and as fooder crop. Fooder crop is cultivated from February to October while cereal crop is cultivated from May to August.

The Production and Distribution of Malze in Pakistan

In Pakistan, the annual production of maize in Pakistan is 1.09 million hectares. Khyber Pakhtun Khwa ranks second in the production of maize. It produces 20.5% maize while the Punjah leads the first in the production of maize because it produces 79% of the total production of maize in Pakistan. The distribution of the production of maize in Pakistan is following.

(i) The Punjab

In Punjab, maize is cultivated in the districts Sargodha, Faisalabad, Jhang, Chiniot, Toba-tek Singh and Sahiwal. It is also cultivated in the tehsils Bore-wala and Arif-wala.

(ii) Sindh

In Sindh, maize is cultivated in Khairpur, Sukkur, Ghotki, Nawabahah, Hoshero Peroz, Sanghar, Umer Kot, Hyderabad and Mirpur Khas districts.

(iii) Khyber Pakhtun Khwa

In Khyber Pakhtun Khwa, maize is cultivated in Krik, Dera Impail Khan, Tonk, Mansehra, Batgram, Swat, Dir, Shangla, Kohat, Mardan, Charsadda, Sawahi and Peshawar

(iv) Balochistan

In Balochistan maize is cultivated in the districts boralai, Zhob, Oila baifullair, Musa Khail, Sibi, Kohlu and Kalat.

(v) Tribal Areas

Maize is also cultivated in the tribal areas of Pakistan. It is cultivated here in Bajor Agency, Orakzai Agency, Kurram Agency, Khyber Agency and Molummani Agency.

Trade of Maize in Pakistan

Maize is cultivated in Pakistan in two times a year because of its consumption as a cereal crop and fooder crop. Maize is supplied to all regions of Pakistan as fooder crop. Maize is supplied to all regions of Pakistan as fooder crop. As cereal crop it is also sold in various parts of Pakistan, It is supplied to edible oil industries for manufacturing corn oil. Many food industries also the purchasers of maize. Thus the domestic trade of maize in Pakistan is organized.

Q.4 Describe the geographical conditions of the cultivation of sugercane, production, distribution and trade in Pakistan.

Ans: Sugercane

Sugercane is an important cash crop of Pakistan. Twe third of the suger with world is obtained from sugercane. The plant of sugercane is bamboo like having a height of 10 to 12 feet. Sugercane is an evergreen plant. Sugercane is a plant of tropical climate but it is also grown in sub-tropical regions. The crop of sugarcane becomes ready within ten to eighteen months.

Geographical Conditions for the Cultivation of Sugercane

Favourable geographical conditions or factors for the cultivation of sugercane are following.

(1) The Climate

Sugercane cannot be cultivated in the regions having extremely cold climate. Hot and humid climate is favourable for the cultivation of sugercane, however it also cultivated in semi-humid climatic regions.

(2) Temperature

Extreme cold and fog both are harmful for the crop of sugercane. The regions where the temperature remains below 40°F, the cultivation of sugercane is not possible there. 70°F to 86°F temperature remains favourable for the cultivation of sugercane. Its cultivation also needs humidity extreme dry climate is also harmful for its cultivation.

(3) Rainfall

The cultivation of sugercane requires 40 to 60 inches annual rate of rainfall. In case of shortage of rainfall, it is cultivated through canal irrigation. The cultivation of sugercane requires irrigation after every one week. At least fifteen times irrigation is done during the period of the preparation of the sugercane crop.

(4) Soil

Alluvial soil and volcanic ash remain favourable for the cultivation of sugercane. The soil which contains lime, phosphorous and potash remains the most suitable for its cultivation. Sugercane is cultivated by buds. In some areas of Pakistan, the crop is harvested from the upper part while the portion inside the Earth is left. Thus the crop of sugercane which is planted at one time gives five or six crops.

(5) Season

In Pakistan sugercane is cultivated two times in a year. At first it is cultivated in the spring season during the months of February and March. In the second time, it is cultivated on large scale in the months September to February. It is classified as Kharif crop.

The Production and Distribution of Sugercane in Pakistan

Sugercane is cultivated in Pakistan in wet-tropical regions. It is cultivated in the valley of Peshawar, upper Indus Plain and Lower Indus Plain. In Balochistan sugercane is cultivated over a limited area. The average production of sugercane is 58.4 million matric tonnes. 59% of the total production of sugercane is obtained from Punjab. 30% of the total production of sugercane is obtained from Sindh and 10% is obtained from Khyber Pakhtun Khwa. The distribution of sugercane producing areas in Pakistan is following.

(i) The Punjab

The Punjab has a prominent status in the production of sugercane. In Punjab, sugercane is cultivated in Sargodha, Bhakkar, Faisalabad, Toba tek Singh, Jhang, Mianwali, Mandi Bahauddin, Kasur, Okara, Sahiwal, Vehari, Pakpattan, Muzzaffargarh. Layyah, Bahawalpur, Bahawalnagar and Rahim Yar Khan. It is also cultivated in Khushab, Sialkot, Gujrat, Narowal, Shaikhupura and Khanewal.

(ii) Sindh

In Sindh, the cultivation of sugercane is done in Khairpur, Nawab Shah, Noshero Feroz, Sanghar, Mirpurkhas, Badin and Thatta. Sukkur and Ghotki are the secondary producers of sugercane in Sindh.

(iii) Khyber Pakhtun Khwa

In Khyber Pakhtun Khwa, the cultivation of sugercane in Tonk, Bunir, Mansehra, Kohat, Mardan, Bannu, Peshawar and Sawabi.

(iv) Balochistan

In Balochistan, sugercane is cultivated over limited area. The districts of Lasbell Naseerabad, Jaffarabad and Sibi are the major sugercane producing areas in Balochistan.

The Trade of Sugercane in Pakistan

Pakistan is one of the important sugercane producing in the world. Sugercane is 40% used in the preparation of Gur and Sugar locally by the farmers while 60% is supplied to the suger mills. The sugar mills in Pakistan have been established near sugercane producing areas, therefore a large amount of sugarcane production in Pakistan is consumed in the manufacturing of suger in these sugar mills. Pakistan also exports suger to other countries. Pakistan ranks 6th in sugercane producing countries in the world. The bagasse which is obtained after receiving sugercane juice is

used as fuel in factories. It is also provided to paper and board manufacturing industries. The molasses obtained after manufacturing suger from sugercane juice is also supplied to many industries for manufacturing alcohol, spirit and other commodities.

Describe the Geographical conditions favourable for the cultivation of cotton, its production, distribution and trade in Pakistan.

Ans: Cotton

Cotton is an important cash crop of Pakistan. Cotton is called as the silver fibre of Pakistan. The plant of cotton is of bush type with an average height of 1.5 metres. Two types of cotton local cotton and American cotton are cultivated in Pakistan. The American cotton has a long staple, therefore more attention is given to its cultivaion. Pakistan exports cotton and cotton products to other countries.

Geographical Conditions for the Cultivation of Cotton

Favourable geographical conditions or factors for the cultivation of cotton are following.

The Climate

(1)The cultivation of cotton is done in moderate hot climate and semi-hot climate. It is a plant of sub-tropical region. Warm-temperate climate play a role for the growth of cotton. Plenty of sunshine is required for the cultivation of cotton for a long period.

Temperature (2)

Cotton is a plant of hot climate, therefore 80°F to 100°F temperature remains favourable during its cultivation. Plenty of sunshine is required for at least 200 days during the cultivation of cotton. In Pakistan the temperature in cotton producing areas increases above from 100°F, therefore the irrigation is done more to the crop of cotton. At the time of Picking the cotton 60°F remain better.

Rainfall (3)

20 inches to 40 inches annual rate of rainfall is necessary for the cultivation of cotton. As the annual rate of rainfall in Pakistan is below 20 inches, therefore the cultivation of cotton is done through canal irrigation. Large quantity of water is harmful for the cotton crop, therefore the crop is irrigated five times during the period of its preparation. The irrigation may be increased on viewing the seasonal conditions because seasonal conditions produce their effect on the cultivation of cotton.

(4)

The soil which is the most fertile and there is an ability of drainage remains favourable for the cultivation of cotton. Cotton cannot be cultivated in sandy soil and clay. The soil with the components potassium, nitrogen and lime is favourable for the cultivation of cotton.

(5) Season

Cotton is classified in Kharif crops in Pakistan. Cotton is cultivated in Pakistan in the months of April and May. The picking of cotton starts from September and it contains till January.

The Production and Distribution of Cotton in Pakistan

In Pakistan, cotton is the second crop after wheat which is cultivated over a large area of cultivation. It is an important cash crop of Pakistan. The area under cultivation of cotton in Pakistan is increasing gradually. The average production of cotton in Pakistan is 13.03 million bales which is obtained from 2.83 million hectares area of production. Per hectare yield of cotton is 816kg. The Punjab produces 80% of the total production of cotton in Pakistan. The distribution of cotton is following.

(I) The Punjab

Punjab ranks the first in the production of cotton in Pakistan. Cotton is cultivated in all divisions of the Punjab. In Punjab, Bahwalpur, Bahawalnagar, Rahim Yar Khan, Rajanpur, Dera Ghazi Khan, Muzzaffargarh, Multan, Sahiwal, Khanewal, Vehari, Lodhran, Pakpattan, Okara, Jhang, Toba-tek Singh and Faisalabad are the most important areas for the production of cotton.

(ii) Sindh

In Sindh, cotton is cultivated in Sukkur, Nawab Shah, Khairpur, Ghotki, Noshero Feroz, Sanghar, Umerkot and Hyderabad.

(iii) Khyber Pakhtun Khwa

In Khyber Pakhtun Khwa, cotton is cultivated in limited areas. Bannu and Dera Ismail Khan in Khyer Pakhtun Khwa are famous for the production of cotton.

(iv) <u>Balochistan</u>

In Balochistan, the cultivation of cotton is limited to some areas. Kolhu and Khuzdar are the major cotton producing areas in Balochistan. Cotton is also cultivated in Naseerabad and Jaffarabad districts. Jhalmagsi, Barkhan, Bolan, Lasbella, Sibi and Zhob districts are the secondary producers regions in Balochistan.

The Trade of Cotton in Pakistan

Different varities of local and American cotton are cultivated in Pakistan. Nayab, Sir Masat, Qalandri and Delta Pine are the varities of American cotton. All these varities have long fibre. Local cotton has shorter fibre and it is mostly used for manufacturing Khuddi Clothes. Pakistan ranks 4th among the cotton producing countries of the world.

Cotton has a wide market for its sale, therefore the domestic as well as foreign trade of cotton is done in Pakistan. Major exports of Pakistan depend upon cotton and its products. Cotton is supplied locally to cotton textile mills for manufacturing of cotton cloth and cotton yarn. Cotton seeds are also provided locally to edible oil manufacturing factories. Pakistan experts cotton to Germany, United Kingdom, France, Italy and many other countries. Pakistan exports nearly five million cotton bales annually and earns a lot of foreign exchange 64% of the foreign exchange in Pakistan is obtained from cotton and its products.

Q.6 Describe the Geographical conditions for the cultivation of tobacco, its production, distribution and trade in Pakistan.

Ans: Tobacco

The actual birth place of tobacco is America. The Portugese introduced tobacco in the Sub-continent in 1508 A.D., thus the cultivation of tobacco spread all over the sub-continent. The height of tobacco plant is about five feet. It grows with broad leaves. It is used intoxication in cigerattes. huqqa, sheesha, naswar, pan and in many other things. It is also used in the preparation of medicines and insectisides.

Geographical Conditions for the Cultivation of Tobacco

Favourable geographical conditions or factors for the cultivation of tobacco are following.

(1) <u>The Climate</u>

Tobacco is the plant of hot and humid climate. It is also cultivated in moderate and sub-tropical regions of climate. Frost and extreme cold is harmful for tobacco plant. All those areas which are included in the temperature zone of climate favourable for the cultivation of tobacco.

(2) <u>Temperature</u>

Tobacco is cultivated in hot climate, therefore 60°F to 80°F temperature remains favourable for the cultivation of tobacco. Snowfall and extreme cold produces bad effects on the crop of tobacco.

(3) <u>Rainfall</u>

20 inches to 25 inches annual rate of rainfall is required for the cultivation of tobacco. High rate of rainfall and water in large quantity is harmful for tobacco crop. Extreme humid and desert regions are not favourable for the cultivation of tobacco. During the cultivation of tobacco in Pakistan, rains appear scarcely, therefore tobacco is cultivated in Pakistan through canal irrigation.

(4) Soil

Loamy which has an ability of drainage of water is considered the best for the cultivation of tobacco. The soil which contained lime, Potassium and vegetative components remains

favourable for the cultivation of tobacco. The fertility of land decreases due to the cultivation of tobacco, therefore chemical fertilizers are used to increase the fertility of soil.

(5)

Though tobacco is classified as Rabi Crop but it is cultivated in Pakistan at the end of winter season. The nursery of tobacco is planted during the month November and December. This nursery then transported to tobacco field during the months of January and February. Tobacco crop is prepared within three to four months therefore it is harvested in the months of May and June.

The Production and Distribution of Tobacco Producing Areas in Pakistan

In Pakistan two types of tobacco are cultivated which are desi tobacco and virginia tobacco. Desi tobacco is used in the huqqa, naswar, beeri, gutka and other local intoxicated products while virginia tobacco is used in cigarette making. Desi tobacco is cultivated all over Pakistan while

virginia tobacco is cultivated in certain regions for commercial purposes.

The annual production of tobacco in Pakistan is about 97000 metric tonnes. It is obtained from 45000 hectares of the cultivated land. In Pakistan Khyber Pakhtun Khwa rank the first in the production of tobacco and it produces 76.7% of the total production while the Punjab is at the second position and it produces 20.8% of the total production. Only 3.3% of the total production of tobacco is obtained from Balochistan. The per hectare yield of tobacco in Pakistan is 1907kg. The distribution of tobacco producing areas in Pakistan is following.

The Puniab (i)

The Punjab ranks second in the production of tobacco. In Punjab tobacco is cultivated in Rajanpur, Vehari, Sahiwal, Toba Tek Singh, Faisalabad, Shaikhupura and Okara which are the major tobacco producing areas. Tobacco is also cultivated in Attock, Mandi Bahauddin, Bahawalpur, Rahim Yar Khan, Hafizabad, Lahore, Kasur, Multan, Khanewal, Pakpattan, . Muzaffargarh, Dera Ghazi Khan and Bahawalnagar. Limited cultivation of tobacco is done in the Punjab in Jhelum, Khushab, Bhakkar, Narowal, Ladhran and Layyah.

Sindh (ii)

In Sindh, the cultivation of tobacco is limited. Dadu, Khairpur, Noshero Feroz, Ghotki and Shikarpur are tobacco producing areas in Sindh.

Khyber Pakhtun Khwa

Khyber Pakhtun Khwa ranks the first in the production of tobacco in Pakistan. The districts Charsaddah, Mardan, Sawabi, Mansehra, Malakand, Buner, Nowshera, Sawat, Dir and Haripur are the major tobacco producing areas in Khyber Pakhtun Khwa.

Balochistan (iv)

In Balochistan, tobacco is cultivated in Pashin, Qila Saifullah, Loralai and Zhob districts.

The Trade of Tobacco in Pakistan

The trade of tobacco in Pakistan is done locally as well as it is also exported to other countries. On domestic level, tobacco is supplied to all those small units who manufacture intoxicating products from tobacco like beeri, Cigar, huqqa, gutka, naswar, pan etc. The trade of tobacco related to these local products is flourishing. Desi tobacco is used for manufacturing these products. Virginia tobacco is supplied to all cigarette manufacturing units. Virginia tobacco is also exported to other countries from Pakistan.

Describe the causes of Agricultural backwardness of Pakistan in detail. What steps heave been taken by the Government for its remedy. Describe Q.7the problems of Agriculture in Pakistan and describe the steps taken by the Government to solve these problems.

Ans: The Causes of Backwardness of Agriculture and the Agricultural

The extensive and fertile lands of Pakistan are the gift of nature. The upper Indus Plain

and the Lower Indus Plain are considered the most fertile lands in the world. These plains are famous as the centre of civilization because of their fertility from the ancient times. Variety of

fruits, cereals and vegetables are produced in these plains,

Agriculture is one and the largest sector of the economy of Pakistan and 25% of GDP is obtained from the agriculture, 55% of the total population of Pakistan get employment through agricultures. 35% foreign exchange is obtained from the export of agricultural raw material and agriculture and products. The economy of Pakistan depends upon agriculture because Pakistan is an agricultural country. Many each crops as well as food crops are cultivated in Pakistan but the rate of agriculture produce is low because of its backwardness and problems. These problems of Pakistan can be described as following,

Lack of capital is one of the major cause of the backwardness of agriculture in Pakistan, The small land holders in Pakistan are poor farmers which cannot afford to buy the sources of increasing the output from their lands of cultivation, thus they have to remain associated with subsistence farming through their lands.

Water Logging and Salinity

Water logging and salinity are the severe problems of the agriculture which have been produced because of canal irrigation. They produce adverse effects on the fertility of land and cultivation cannot be done on such affected lands. Nearly 8000 acres of land is being deprived of its productivity every year through the adverse effects of water logging and salinity.

inadoquate Supply of Agricultural Facilities

The supply of agricultural facilities in Pakistan is not satisfactory, improved seeds, chemical fertilizers, pesticides and insecticides and other necessary facilities are not provided to the cultivators in time, so the agricultural production becomes affected.

(iv) Lack of Provision of Agricultural Loans

Agricultural credit or loans play very important role for the development of agriculture. In Pakistan, the provision of agricultural loans is a difficult procedure, these loans are issued in a limited calculation. Small landholders cannot take benefits throgh these loans because of their terms and conditions. The landlords obtain these loans but do not use them on the improvement of their lands.

Lack of Facilities of Agricultural Training

The farmers and the cultivators should be trained for doing their agricultural activities. In (v) Pakistan the facilities of agricultural training are available on very limited scale. Training programmes only broadcasted on radio and television but there is no arrangement of producing agricultural training at every place where the cultivation is done.

Non-Mechanized Cultivation

The major cause of the backwardness of the agriculture of Pakistan is non-mechanized cultivation. In the most areas of Pakistan old methods of farming are still being used. The farmer do their work manually. The use of modern equipments and agricultural machinery in Pakistan is very limited.

The Distribution of Agricultural Lands (vII)

One of the major cause of the backwardness of the agriculture in Pakistan is the distribution of agricultural lands. 25.5% of the farmers of Pakistan are small land holders. usually are the owners of land less than 4 acres. The most farmers have only 15 acres of land. Landlords and feudal lords are the owners of extensive lands. The small landholders which are poor farmers cannot use modern equipments and facilities for cultivation while the landlords and feudal lords do not pay attention to look after their lands properly.

(vili) Floods and Soil Erosion

Floods and soil erosion are also a cause of backwardness of agriculture in Pakistan. Storage and protection facilities for the crops are not available, therefore floods in Pakistan destroy not only the standing crops but also damage the storage of the crops. The soil erosion which appears because of floods also decreases the fertility of the soil. Both these factors decrease the agricultural production in Pakistan.

The Steps Taken by the Government for the Remedy of Agricultural Problems

The Government of Pakistan has taken many steps to overcome the backwardness of agriculture and for the remedy of agricultural problems in Pakistan. These steps can be described as following.

Introduction Standard Measure System (i)

The Government of Pakistan has introduced a standard measuring and standard weight system in order to control the injustice through measuring.

The Established of Organized Markets (ii)

The government of Pakistan has established many organized agricultural markets through a programme. These agricultural markets have been established to provide protection to farmers. These markets have been established for the sale of agricultural products. More than hundred agricultural markets have been established in the Punjab, Sindh and Khyber Pakhtun Khwa.

The Publishing of Survey Reports

The Government of Pakistan has managed to publish the survey reports for the need of agricultural products, in these reports, the information about the sale and purchase of all kinds of agricultural commodities is provided.

The Classification of Agricultural Commodities (lv)

The Government has an ordinance to apply the classification of commodities. The government has also established committees. These market committees manage the markets according to the rules of the Government.

The Establishment of Agricultural Development Bank (v)

The Government of Pakistan has established Agricultural Development Bank (ADBP) to develop the agricultural sector. Agricultural Development Bank has been established in order to provide loans to the farmers and cultivators on easy terms and conditions. This Bank has played its role from time of its establishment in 1961 till now. The commercial banks are also cooperating the government in the provision of agricultural loans. The commercial banks provide loans to the farmers and cultivators according to their requirements. 4

The Establishment of Cooperative Banks

Co-operative societies are the ancient source of the provision of loans. The Government has established co-operative banks to achieve this purpose, so that the role of co-operative

Educational Facilities (vii)

The basic need for the solution of agricultural problems that the education should be provided to the farmers and cultivators about agriculture. The Government has extended educational facilities to the farmers and cultivators through Agricultural Department. The training about the use of modern scientific methods of cultivation is being provided. An overall adult educational programme has been started in rural areas. Radio and television programmes on agriculture are broadcasted to educate the farmers about modern methods of cultivation. Pamphlets and leaflets have been published for creating awareness among the farmers about

(viii) Land Reforms

It is necessary the agricultural problems of Pakistan that different kinds of reforms are prepared and enforced them throughout the country. The Government has introduced Land Reforms in 1959, 1972 and 1977. Under these reforms, the Government fixed a ceiling on land-holding of big landlords and distributed the surplus land among the landless farmers. The objectives of land reforms were to improve relation between the tenants and the land-owners, and to abolish the monopoly of big landlords. But still there is need to make more reforms so that



Chp.8: Agriculture of Pakistan

uncultivated land could be made more productive.

(ix) Improvement of the Means of Irrigation

The Government of Pakistan has taken many steps in order to improve the Means of irrigation. Artificial means of irrigation are being made more effective for providing timely water supply to the fields. The steps are also being taken to control water logging and salinity in order to restore the fertility of land.

(x) Agricultural Research Facilities

Agricultural research plays a vital role in the development of agriculture. The Government has set up Agricultural Institutions such as Agricultural Universities and colleges. These institutions are providing education in different subjects of agriculture. Agricultural university of Peshawar, Agricultural University Rawalpindi, Bahawalpur, Agricultural University of Tando Jam, Agricultural College Multan and Agricultural Institute at Dokra Larkana are the important institution of agricultural research.

Q.8 What is meant by Food Autarky? Describe the present position of Pakistan in Food Autarky. Describe the food problems of Pakistan and suggest solution of food problems for achieving Food Autarky.

Ans: Food Autarky

The production of food vegetation in such quantity which is quite enough to fulfill the food requirements of food of the whole population of a country is called Food Autarky. Food Autarky is actually a state of the production of agricultural products more than the requirement and consumption of the whole population of a country.

Present Position of Pakistan in Food Autarky

In 1947, Pakistan came into being, it produced then food crops more than the requirements of its population. Pakistan got an agricultural economy in heritage and the province Punjab was called "The Grain Basket" of the sub-continent, but foreign trade of the food products started in 1952-53. During 1998-99 period, the need of importing agricultural products appeared and 4 million tonnes of wheat was imported in Pakistan during this period and 2.4 billion dollars were consumed on the import of wheat during this period.

Wheat is the staple food or primary diet of the people of Pakistan. 80% of wheat is consumed in Pakistan of the total food grains. A review of the position of Pakistan in Food Autark

can be taken as following.

(i) In 1952, 1 million tonnes of wheat was imported in order to meet food requirements in Pakistan.

(ii) During the First Five Year Plan (1955-1960), the agricultural production 1.3% annually while the population increased 2.6% annually as compared to the production.

- (iii) In Second Five Year Plan (1960-1965), special attention was given to achieve the aim of food autarky in Pakistan. Land Reforms was intorudced and steps were taken to provided loans to cultivators.
- (iv) During Second Five Year Plan, the production of food grains was increased 27%. In third Five Year Plan (1965-70) the production of food grains were increased 11.7% annually.
- (v) The production of food grains was increased continuously. After 1977 because of the use of chemical fertilizers and agricultural medicines.

(vi) During the period of 1993-94, the production of cotton and wheat both decreased in Pakistan. During 1995-96, the production increased 6.7% annually.

(vii) During the period of 1997-98, the Government announced Agricultural Package in order to achieve the Food Autarky in Pakistan. During 1999-2000, 20 million metric tonnes of wheat was produced and first time Pakistan exported wheat.

During the period of 2006-07, the production of food grains in Pakistan was 6.7% and 23.52 million metric tonnes of wheat was produced which is a historical record. The present wheat requirement of the country is more than 20 million tonnes. Though Pakistan produces wheat, rice and other food grains in large quantity but the aim of the food autarky could not be achieved till

now. If the requirements of wheat are met in a year then suger crisis is appeared. If the proper guidance is provided to the cultivators about the structure and properties of land and modern agricultural requipments are applied, then Pakistan will be able to achieve the aim of food autarky.

The Problems of Food Production in Pakistan

The production of food grains in Pakistan is related to agriculture. It should be necessary that the agriculture is in organized form with the association of modern technology. In Pakistan, agricultural sector is backward and facing many problems, thus the problems of food production are cleared. The problems of food production in Pakistan can be described as following.

(i) The Area of Cultivation

The total area of cultivation in Pakistan is about 79.6 million hectares but the cultivation is done only 25.2% of the total area. A large portion of the cultivated land is useless because of unavailability of water and lack of capital.

(ii) Per Year Cultivation

In Pakistan usually only one crop is cultivated during a year. It is necessary to obtain every food grain crop at least twice during a year.

(iii) Inadequate Irrigation Facilities

Though, one of the best canal irrigation system is operating in Pakistan, but during the cultivation of the food grains, the problems of irrigation appear. Due to untimely supply of water, the crops of food grains become affected, thus the production of food grains decreases.

(iv) Low Per Acre Production

In Pakistan, per acre production of the food grains is low. It is only one-fourth of the production of developed countries of the world. Low Per acre production decreases the collective production, thus sometimes, the shortage of food grains is observed and the Government has to spend a lot of money on the import of food grains.

(v) Unavailability of Modern Agricultural Facilities

In Pakistan, the old methods of cultivation are being used till now. Chemical fertilizers of food quality cannot be provided in time. Most of the farmers in Pakistan perform their agricultural work manually. The use of modern agricultural equipments and technology is very limited. In these circumstances the cultivation of the food grains in Pakistan is just limited to the subsistence farming.

The Solution of the Problems of Food Grains Production

Self sufficiency in food is a challenge for Pakistan. The management of the agricultural resources in Pakistan is not satisfactory. It is necessary to take the steps not only the protection of the forests and natural vegetation but also to organize the agriculture according to the needs of modern times, so Pakistan will be able to achieve its aim of self-sufficiency in food being as an agricultural country. Some suggestions can be described as following for the solution of the problems of food grains production in Pakistan.

(i) Good Management

First of all it is necessary to make a good management for looking after of the agricultural sector in Pakistan. Agricultural production should be organized and all necessary facilities provided in time in order to increase per acre production. The protection of the crops and their storage should be improved.

(ii) Development of Multiple Cropping

It is necessry to develop multiple cropping in Pakistan. For proper management, it should be made possible to cultivate more than one crops at a time.

(iii) The Application of Chemical Technology

For increasing the agricultural output of the food grains, modern chemical technology should be used on the cultivation. Chemical fertilizers and medicines for the treatment of the crop diseases should be manufactured specifically on viewing the structure of soil and environment.



Iqra Commercial Geography for Class X

(iv) The Application of Hydrological Technology

For the improvement of the condition of the production of food grains, it is also necessary to apply the modern technological technology on the process of technology. Modern machines should be used for irrigation.

(v) The Application of Mechanical Technology

It is necessary to make all the process of cultivation modern. Different machines should be used at various level of cultivation. Selection of seeds, sowing of seeds, ploughing and harvesting all should be done through machines.

IMPORTANT MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS - MCQs

	IMPORTANT MULTIPLE CH		- AOFOIL		
Cho	pose the correct answer for each of the fo	llow	ing from the	give	n option
(1)	Sugercane is mostly grown in the areas when	e the	annual average	rain	is:
(1)	(a) More than 100 inches	(b)	More than 40) inch	es
	(c) Less than 10 inches	(d)	None of these	2	
(2)	It is a crop of Rabi Season:				
(-)	(a) Rice (b) Wheat	(c)		(d)	Maize
(3)	The major and important cash crop of Pakist	an is:			
\- /	(a) Sugercane (b) Cotton	(c)	Tobacco	(d)	Oil seeds
(4)	The rice is important food crop of Pakistan:				
	(a) First (b) <u>Second</u>	(c)	Third	(d)	Fourth
(5)	The most important Non-Food Cash Crop of	Pakis	stan is;	4.15	
			Cotton	(d)	Tea
(6)	The Second Agricultural Land Reforms were	enfor	ced in the year:		1055 A.D.
	(4)		1960 A.D.	(a)	1965 A.D.
(7)	It is sown in winter and harvested in summe		2 1 4	(4)	Kharif Crop
	(a) Cash Crop (b) Food Crop		Rabi Crop	(d)	Charli Crop
(8)	The most important food crop of Pakistan is:		Millot	(4)	Wheat
	(a) Rice (b) Maize	(c)	Millet	(4)	Water
(9)	Pakistan is basically a/an country:		Mineral	(4)	Agricultural
	(a) Industrial (b) Commercial	(c)	willerar	(d)	Agriculturus
(10)	The Agricultural Policy in Pakistan was frame	(a)	1961 A.D.	(d)	1971 A.D.
	(a) 1952 A.D. (b) <u>1958 A.D.</u>	(c)	1901 A.D.	(4)	1371 11.0.
(11)	The cultivation of wheat is carried out in:	(-)	Three Provinc	(4)	Four Province
¥200 200	(a) One Province (b) Two Province	(c)	Tiffee Provinc	e(u)	Tour Trovince
(12)	It is called as Silver fibre of Pakistan:	(-)	Wool	(d)	Wheat
	(a) Jute (b) <u>Cotton</u>			(u)	W licat
(13)	It is the staple food of the majority of people	or Pa	Rice	(d)	Millet
	(a) Maize (b) Wheat	(c)	Rice	(4)	Millet
(14)	Suger is manufactured from:	(.)	Disc	(d)	Maltuse
	(a) Glucose (b) Sugercane	(c)	Rice	(u)	make s
(15)	Suger is obtained in large quantity from:	(-)	Mangoos	(d)	Sugerbeet
	(a) Sugercane (b) Grapes	(c)	Mangoes	(4)	111271111
(16)	It is generally called as Silver Fibre:	(-)	Weel	(4)	国 型 型
	(a) Jute (b) <u>Cotton</u>	(c)	Wool		
(17)	Southern Punjab and Sindh are the major are	as or	Cotton	(4)	Tobacco
	(a) Rice (b) Sugercane	(c)	Cotton	(u)	Tobacco
(18)	This type of cultivation is required for sugerc	ane c	uitivation:	-1(4)	Uet equatorial
	(a) Dry desert like (b) Cool desert like	(c)	Humia tropic	$\frac{m}{a}(a)$	Hot equatorial
(19)	The average annual rainfall in Pakistan is:	. 0	Charles in the A		

(b) 25 inches

(a)

20 inches

(c) 30 inches

(d) 35 inches

(20)	This is the second largest cash crop of Pakistan:
	(a) Sugercane (b) Tobacco (c) Maire (d) Pice
(21)	This crop, after wheat occupies the second largest area of cultivation: (a) Sugercape (b) Costs
	(a) Sugercane (b) Cotton (c) Tobacco (d) Rice
(22)	Frust or severe cold is very harmful for the cultivation of: (a) Cotton (b) Cotton (c) Tobacco (d) Rice
` '	(a) Cotton (b) Sugarcane (c) When
(23)	(a) Cotton (b) Sugercane (c) Wheat (d) Tobacco
(20)	Sugercane Industry in Pakistan depends upon the production of: (a) Beat (b) Sugercane (c) Wheat (d) Tobacco
(24)	(III SUGGERANA (-) D
(24)	it is one of the by-product of sugercane crop.
(25)	(a) Chipboard (b) Paper
(25)	The plant of this crop cannot bear the frost:
(0.0)	(a) Sugercane (b) Tohacco
(26)	With respect to production and cultivated area is the most important food crop of Pakistan:
	(a) Rice (b) Wheat (c) Cotton (d) Sugarcana
(27)	In a year, the crops are grown in Pakistan: (c) Cotton (d) Sugercane
	(a) Two times (b) There simes
(28)	The share of Agriculture in the National I
` '	The share of Agriculture in the National Income of Pakistan is: (a) 25% (b) 30% (c) Four times (d) Five times (d) 25%
(29)	(0) 30/0
(/	The percentage of the people in Pakistan directly or indirectly associated with agriculture is:
(30)	
(30)	(a) 20% CP
	(a) 50% of Population . (b) 45% of Population
(21)	(d) 70% of Population
(31)	the type of corton cultivated in Pakistan are:
(22)	(a) 1wo (b) Three
(32)	The street of replaced cultivated in Pakistan are:
(22)	(d) 1300 (b) Five
(33)	Basmati Rice is produced in large quantity in this province.
	(a) The Punjab (b) Sindh (c) Khyber Palebran What (b) The Fire (c) The Punjab (d)
(34)	It is also used as Fooder Crop:
	(a) Rice (b) Wheat
(35)	Tobacco is cultivated in large quantity in this province: (a) The Province:
	(a) The Punjab (b) Sindh (c) White party
(36)	Khyber Pakhtun Khwa produces this food crop in large quantity: (d) Balochistan
(37)	It is first planted into Nursery then transported into field: (d) Pulses (d) Pulses
(38)	
(,	It is the most important need of cigeratte manufacturing units: (a) Paper (b) Tohacco (c) International Control (d) Maize
(39)	(a) rapel (b) Tobacco (c) Into
(33)	maize is classified as:
(40)	(a) Summer Crop (b) Winter Crop (c) Rabi Crop (d) Kharif Crop
(40)	The present consumption of wheat in Pakistan is about.
	(a) 10 million tones(b) 20 million tones (c) 30 million tones(d) 35 million tones